

# YAJNAVALKYA'S SMRITI

WITH THE COMMENTARY OF VIJNANEŚVARA

CALLED

## THE MITAKSARA

AND

THE GLOSS OF BÂLAMBHAṬṬA

### PART I

THE SOURCES OF HINDU LAW AND DUTIES OF A STUDENT

TRANSLATED BY

SRISA CHANDRA VASU



PUBLISHED BY

THE PÂNINĪ OFFICE, BHUVANEŚWARI ÂSRAMA, BAHADURGANJ

Allahabad

PRINTED BY PANCH KORY MITTRA AT THE INDIAN PRESS

1909

## INTRODUCTION.

---

Next to Manu's Institutes of Sacred Law, the Smṛiti of Yājñavalkya is the most important. It contains 1010 slokas or stanzas; and is divided into three Adhyâyas or books, namely Âchâra or ecclesiastical and moral code: Vyavahâra or the civil law and Prâyaścitta (Penance) or the penal code. Each part or Adhyâya contains the following number of stanzas:—

Âchâra ...	...	...	...	...	...	368 stanzas.
24. Vyavahâra	...	...	...	...	...	307 „
6 Prâyaścitta	...	...	...	...	...	335 „

The present number of the Sacred Books of the Hindus contains the first fifty verses of the Âchâra portion. The whole of Âchâra is divided into 13 chapters thus:—

Chapter	I	Introduction	...	...	...	1—9 Stanzas.
"	II	Brahmachâri	...	...	...	10—50 „
"	III	Marriage	...	...	...	51—89 „
"	IV	Varna-Jâti	...	...	...	90—96 „
"	V	Gṛihastha	...	...	...	97—128 „
"	VI	Snâtaka-Dharma	...	...	...	129—166 „
"	VII	Food	...	...	...	167—181 „
"	VIII	Purification of things	...	...	...	182—197 „
"	IX	Dâna	...	...	...	198—216 „
"	X	Śrâddha	...	...	...	217—270 „
"	XI	Worship of Ganeśa	...	...	...	271—294 „
"	XII	Graha-Sânti	...	...	...	295—308 „
"	XIII	Râja-Dharma	...	...	...	309—368 „

There are several well-known commentaries on Yājñavalkya's Institutes: such as by Aparârka, by Viśvarûpa, and by Vijñâneśvara. But the commentary of Vijñâneśvara has superseded the other two and under the name of the Mitâkṣarâ it is universally accepted as authoritative by the Hindus of these Provinces. The full name of the commentary of Vijñâneśvara is Riju-mitâkṣarâ or the Easy and Concise. But the name Mitâkṣarâ has become so well-known that it is too late now to revert to the name given to it by the commentator himself. Even by Sanskrit authors the book is quoted, for brevity's sake, as the Mitâkṣarâ.

The gloss of Bâlabhattacha is a comparatively recent one. It is rather encyclopedic in its scope and a sample of it I have given in this part. The book professes to have been composed by a learned lady: but Babu Vinoda Dâsa of Benares, the learned editor of the *Editio Princeps* of Bâlabhattachi states that the real author of it was the husband of this lady.

The author Vaidyanātha Paiyaguṇḍa lived in the eighteenth century, and as he lived in Benares, there is every reason to believe in the truth of this Benares tradition.

The whole of Yājñavalkya's Institutes was translated by Mr. Mandlik into English in 1880 A. D. leaving, of course, the commentary and the gloss. I am much indebted to that translation in my rendering of the verses of Yājñavalkya.

In translating the commentary of Vijñāneśvara (*i. e.*, the Mitākṣarā) I have tried to be as literal as was consistent with readable presentation of the original. In the gloss of Bālabhāṭṭa however, the translation is mostly free: and in several cases it is even an abridgment of the gloss. Moreover I have not translated the whole of it, but only such extracts as thought would be interesting to general readers. The gloss of Bālabhāṭṭa is a storehouse of information, proceeding on the same lines as Vīramitrodaya. I have given also comparative extracts from the Grihya-Sūtras to show the nature of those treatises; and to give concrete notions of these books to ordinary readers so that they might not remain as mere names. The translations of these books in Max Müller's series of Sacred Books of the East have, of course, been of great help to me. I have given the exact translations of these as they appeared in that series: except in one case where the phrase "the wife addicted to her husband," has been changed to "the wife devoted to her husband."

The two chapters now offered to the public contain the sources of the Hindu Law and the duties of a religious student or a Brahmachār. Among the sources of the Hindu Law, Yājñavalkya enumerates the known fourteen vidyās or sciences (according to some eighteen), namely the four Vedas—the Rik, the Yajus, the Sāman and the Atharva—the six Vedāṅgas or Appendages to the Vedas—the Phonetics, Literature, Grammar, the Lexicon, Astronomy and the Prosody—and Logic, the Exegetics, the Purāṇas and the Dharma-Sāstras or the Institutes of the Sacred Law. All these fourteen subjects are not only sources of Vidyās or knowledge but of law also. Yājñavalkya then enumerates the various Institutes of the Sacred Law, such as Manu, Atri, &c. According to him the authoritative Smṛitis are 20 in number as named by him but according to the commentators this number is raised to 36 or more by enumerating others not mentioned by Yājñavalkya. Considering the question of the sources of law, from a still different point of view, we are at a four-fold division, namely, 1. the Vedas, 2. the Smṛitis or Dharma-Sāstras, 3. the Custom (*sadāchāra*), 4. Voluntary.

According to this division, the custom holds a third place; and

general rule of Hindu Law as to the relative authority of these four is that the Vedas or the Revelations are the supreme authority ; next to them are the Smritis or the Institutes of the Sacred Law ; and third, the customary Law. The rule of interpretation in case of conflict among these is that the Revelation (the Vedas) would prevail over Tradition (the Smriti) and the Tradition over the Custom. There cannot be any valid Custom *opposed* to the Vedas or the Smritis.

The modern idea, that prevails in our Courts, is that the customary law is the highest, and the written law (the Vedas and the Smritis) of secondary importance. Whether Yājñavalkya or Vijñāneśvara would ~~have~~ <sup>hold</sup> the latter view I leave the readers to judge.

24. The time Chapter Second is called the Brahmachâri Prakaraṇa. Yājñ-  
25. Th mentions the well-known ten sacraments of the Hindus: but gives  
26. details of the ceremonies. His commentator Vijnāneśvara also does  
27. not enter, in his Mitākṣarā, into any detailed exposition of these. But  
Bālabhāṭṭa supplies the omission. All these ceremonies are described  
in copious detail in this gloss. They are certainly of great use to every  
Hindu. All good Hindus, who want to regulate their conduct pro-  
33. perly, and wish to see that these ceremonies should be properly performed  
by their priests, should at least know the general outline of the rituals.  
The want of this knowledge of the rituals, by the Hindu laity has reacted  
on their priests also. The priests have become in many cases ignorant:  
and the ceremonies, the proper performance of which would take hours,  
are finished purfunctorily within half that time. I have given an almost  
description of one ceremony namely the Ṣaṣṭhi Pujā. That would  
what other ceremonies are like. This Ṣaṣṭhi Pujā is one of the  
sacramentary ceremonies yet even this contains more than a score of Vedic  
mantras. Even if our priests know how to recite these mantras, ten to one,  
they do not know their meaning. Unless the yajmāns (the sacrificers)  
know something of these ceremonies, there is no hope that the priests will  
be better than what they are now. At the same time yajamāns must not  
expect to get a better class of priests unless they raise the remuneration of  
these to respectable figures.

This second chapter (Bālabhāṭṭa) contains also the famous law of adoption by Baudhāyana. I have given the full Sanskrit text, its word meaning and translation as made by Dr. Bühler. The word meaning, I hope, would be found useful to those legal practitioners whose knowledge of Sanskrit is elementary.

As regards the two sacraments—the Pumsavana (the ceremony to secure the birth of a male child), and the Simantonnayana (the parting of



the hair of the pregnant wife—from which date all marital relation should cease), I have given copious extracts from the Grihya Sûtras relating to these ceremonies as prevalent in ancient times.

The rules of Brahmachârin in ancient time aimed at making man of a student. Only those are fit to be members of a noble and highly organised community who learn in their school days the lessons of plain living, and discipline. The students in ancient times had to live in the houses of their gurus which were generally far away from the busy haunts of men : generally in forests, while learning all the sciences that ancient India could impart—and they were not few—they were scrupulously guarded from participation in all *active* duties of life. ~~Those~~ <sup>They</sup> in the first place, unmarried and not like the majority of our ~~High~~ <sup>High</sup> school College students, with babies at home. They were taught to respect teachers and rulers, and the teachers and rulers in their turn loved and protected them. They respected the king and the king respected them. They had absolutely nothing to do with politics. The sons of kings and ruling chiefs were undoubtedly taught all the laws of political economy (Artha-Sâstra) and statecraft (Raja-Niti) but even they were not allowed to mix in any political agitation of the time, if there were any such things in those days. Nor can it be imagined that a student of those Vedic schools, clad in his garment of antelope skin and bearing a water pot in hand was ever found hurling a deadly weapon against any human being. It was not the duty of the student to carry on the agitation for the redressing of the wrongs, real or imaginary, done to him or his country. If a Brahmachârin broke his vow and transgressed the rule of his âsrama, he was looked down with contempt and not in any way encouraged in his wrong path. Such was the student and such the Guru. It is nothing short of a sad decadence of religion, in this land of religion, that the noble ideal of the Brahmacharya âsrama should have entirely disappeared.

The enterprising publishers, the Indian Press, Allahabad, have undertaken the printing of the great gloss of Bâlabhattachâra. This *editio princeps* is worthy of this firm. It is printed on Super Royal thick paper and the Sanskrit text of the Yājñavalkya Smṛiti, Viṣṇuśaṅkara's Mitâksarâ and Bâlabhattachâra's Gloss is printed in beautiful, bold type. The editorial part is performed very ably and creditably by that great scholar and lover of Sanskrit literature and indefatigable collector of rare manuscripts, Babu Govinda Das, Rais, Durga Kunḍa, Benares, one of the Founders and Trustees of the Central Hindu College, Benares. Two hundred pages of the commentary, upto the end of Brahmachari Prakaraṇa are published and can be supplied to our subscribers and the public at Rs. 2 per part.

	Page.
1. The Secret Name ... ..	41
12. The Nakṣatras and Names Table ... ..	42
13. The Niṣkramaṇ ... ..	42
1. Upaveśana ... ..	43
2. Annaprāsana ... ..	43
3. Boring of the Ear ... ..	43
4. The birthday anniversary ... ..	43 to 45
5. Chudākaraṇa or the tonsure ... ..	45
6. The Śikhā ... ..	47
7. Āpastamba on Upanayana ... ..	48
8. The Gṛihya-Sūtras on Pumsavana Śimantonnayana ... ..	49 to 55
9. The first learning of the Alphabet ... ..	55
10. The utility of the Sacraments ... ..	57
11. The time of Upanayana ... ..	58
12. The duties of Gurus ... ..	59
13. The study of the Gāyatrī ... ..	60
14. The rules of Personal purification ... ..	61
15. Āchamana and its method ... ..	63 to 65
16. Auspicious stars for initiation ... ..	67
17. Sandhyā ... ..	68
18. Mārjana mantras ... ..	69
19. Sūrya arghya ... ..	69
20. Arghya mantras ... ..	69, 70
21. Tilaka ... ..	70
22. Prāṇāyāma ... ..	72
23. The Japa of Gāyatrī ... ..	73
24. The Mantrāchaman ... ..	74
25. The Gāyatrī with its Vyākṛitis and Śīras ... ..	75
26. The various meanings of the Gāyatrī ... ..	76
27. The Homa ceremony mantras ... ..	77
28. Avivādana ... ..	79
29. The worship of the Guru ... ..	81
30. Methods of study ... ..	82
31. The qualifications of the student ... ..	83
32. The dress of the student, the staff and the sacred thread ... ..	83 to 85
33. The forms of begging ... ..	87
34. The Fire Sacrifice ... ..	88
35. The Brāhmaṇa Brahmachāri may eat at a Śraddha ... ..	90
36. Things prohibited to a Brahmachāri ... ..	90
37. The definitions of the Guru, Achārya, Upādhyāya, Ritvij ... ..	91 to 92
38. The Pākayajña ... ..	92
39. The period of studentship ... ..	93
40. Vratya defined ... ..	95
41. The Twice-born defined ... ..	96
42. The Reward of Vedic study ... ..	97
43. The Perpetual Student ... ..	102

# CONTENTS.

## BOOK FIRST—ÂCHÂRA ADHYÂYA.

### CHAPTER FIRST

#### SOURCES OF HINDU LAW.

1. Vijñāneśvara's salutation	...	...	...	...
2. The Four Aims of life	...	...	...	...
3. Vijñāneśvara's foreword	...	...	...	...
4. Viśvarupa's Commentary referred to	...	...	...	...
5. The question of the sages	...	...	...	...
6. The six kinds of Dharma	...	...	...	...
7. The territorial jurisdiction	...	...	...	...
8. The fourteen sources of Dharma	...	...	...	...
9. The eighteen Purāṇas	...	...	...	...
10. The two Bhāgavat Purāṇas	...	...	...	...
11. The Upapurāṇas	...	...	...	...
12. The authority of the Purāṇas	...	...	...	...
13. The list of Smṛitis	...	...	...	...
14. The efficient cause of Dharma	...	...	...	...
15. The Jñāpaka cause of Dharma	...	...	...	...
16. The Four-fold evidence of Dharma (verse 7)	...	...	...	...
17. The Conflict of Laws	...	...	...	...
18. The self-realisation, the highest Dharma (verse 8)	...	...	...	...
19. The Legal assembly or Paṇṣad	...	...	...	...

### CHAPTER SECOND

#### THE SACRAMENTS AND STUDENTSHIP.

1. The Four Castes (verse 10)	...	...	...	...
2. The Twice-born (verse 10)	...	...	...	...
3. The Sacraments :—				
(a) Garbhādhāna	...	...	...	...
(b) Pūṃsavana	...	...	...	...
(c) Sīmantonnayana	...	...	...	...
(d) Jāta Karma	...	...	...	...
(e) Nāma Karma	...	...	...	...
(f) Niṣkramaṇ	...	...	...	...
(g) Annaprāśana	...	...	...	...
(h) Chudākarana	...	...	...	...
4. Painless delivery ceremony	...	...	...	...
5. Rules for pregnant women	...	...	...	...
6. Rules for their husbands	...	...	...	...
7. Birth rite	...	...	...	...
8. Adoption	...	...	...	...
9. Saṣṭhi Pujā	...	...	...	...
10. Naming Ceremony	...	...	...	...

Hail! In the Sāka year 1339, in the Samvatsara, called Sarvadhāri, on the tenth day of the bright half of the month Aśvina, on a Thursday, on that day the book of Nikṛitarāma-kaviśvara Sarangdharakavi, was completed. May it be a gift to Nṛsimha.

According to these Slokas, especially 4—6, Viṣṇuśvara lived in Kalyāṇapura, under a king Vikramāditya. Now the only Kalyāṇapura, which, as far as we know, was governed by kings of the name of Vikramāditya, is Kalyāṇi in the Dekhan. This town was, for many centuries, the seat of a Chālukya dynasty, which produced no less than three Vikramādityas, who reigned at the end of the sixth, at the beginning of the eleventh, and at the end of the eleventh centuries, respectively.

It is impossible that the first Vikramāditya can be meant in our verses, as Viṣṇuśvara is certainly later than Kumārila and Śaṅkarāchārya (7th and 8th centuries A.D.). Nor is it probable, that the second king, called by W. Elliot (Journ. R. A. S., Vol. IV., p. 4) Vikramāditya I., who bears also the title Vibhuvikrama, is intended; for, as this prince reigned at the beginning of the eleventh century, from Sāka 930—940, according to Elliot's conjecture it is not likely that Viṣṇuśvara, if he had lived under him, would quote the writings of Bhoja of Dhār, who flourished about the same time. I am, therefore, inclined to believe, that the Vikramāditya of our verses is Kalivikrama or Permadiraya, who reigned from Sāka 998—1040. Hence Viṣṇuśvara may be safely placed in the latter half of the eleventh century after Christ. The remaining facts regarding Viṣṇuśvara, which may be gathered from the above lines, are not less interesting.

First, in verse 5 it is stated, that Viṣṇuśvara was a worshipper of Kṛishṇa, and this statement agrees with the introductory verse, prefixed to the old manuscript, as well other copies of the Mitāksharā, which contains an invocation of Viṣṇu. We are thereby enabled to correct Mr. Colebrooke's opinion that Viṣṇuśvara was a follower of Śaṅkarāchārya, since the latter devoted himself to the exclusive worship of Śiva.

Secondly, the connexion of Viṣṇuśvara with the Chālukyas may furnish an answer to the question, how it happened that his work acquired so great an authority over all India.

Most of the more modern compilations on law, or commentaries on law books, have been written by Pandits who lived at the courts or under the protection of kings, for the use of their masters. Thus the Viramitrodaya was written for Vīrasimha, the Vyavahāramayukha for Bhagavantadeva of Bhareha, the Sarasvativilāsa for and in the name of Pratāparudra, &c. It is, therefore, in the case of Viṣṇuśvara, not improbable, that he lived under the protection of and wrote for Vikramāditya. If this be so, then the circumstance that Kalivikrama was the most powerful of all the Chālukya princes of Kalyāṇi, and that his empire embraced the greater part of Southern and Western India, would go far to explain, why the Mitāksharā came into so general use and so high repute.

In conclusion, I must add that it would seem, that Mr. Colebrooke, also, saw a copy in which the verses given above were preserved. He states (*l. c.*) that a manuscript had been shown to him, in which Viṣṇuśvara was made a contemporary of Vikramāditya. He mistook this Vikramāditya for the old Vikrama, and, under this supposition, declared the statement to be incredible.

Our verses, I believe, do not belong to Viṣṇuśvara himself, but have been added by some Shastri or copyist.

## NOTE.

*According to Doctor George Buhler, Viññāneśvara flourished in the 11th Century. We give his opinion as embodied in his paper on a note on the age of the author of the Mitākṣarā read at a meeting of the BOMBAY BRANCH OF THE ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY, held on 8th October 1868.*

As in the case of most Sanskrit writers, the age of Viññāneśvara, the author of the famous Mitākṣarā, which serves as the principal authority in law over the greatest part of India, is involved in great obscurity. Many of the native Pandits believe his writings to be about two thousand years old. Mr. Colebrooke contended in the preface prefixed to his translation of the portion of the Mitākṣarā on Inheritance, (Wh. Stokes' *Hindu Law Books*, p. 178) that this opinion must be erroneous. He states there that Viññāneśvara belonged to an order of ascetics, founded by Śāṅkarācārya in the eighth century after Christ, and that his writings, therefore, could not be older than 1,000 years. He further adds, that Viññāneśvara quotes also a writer whom he calls Dhāreśvara, the lord of Dhār, and, that, if this person was the famous King Bhoja, the Mitākṣarā could not be older than 800 years.

In the Digest of Hindu Law, edited by Mr. R. West and myself, it has been shown (introduction, p. V.) that Dhāreśvara, quoted by Viññāneśvara, is the same as Bhojarāja, and that there are other reasons, which make it probable that Viññāneśvara lived in the eleventh or twelfth century.

This conjecture is confirmed by some verses which are added at the end of an old manuscript of the Mitākṣarā, dated Śāke 1389 = 1467 A.D., and purchased by me last year for the Government of Bombay. The conclusion of the work, which is identical with that of the Bombay lithographed edition, stands there in the following manner :—

## TRANSLATION.

Here ends the third chapter in the Commentary on the Institutes (of Yājñavalkya), which is called Riju Mitākṣarā, and which is composed by the illustrious Sannyāsi, the lord Viññāneśvara, the son of the Upādhyāya Bhāradvāja Padmanābhabhaṭṭa.

1. This Commentary on the Institutes (of Yājñavalkya) has been composed by the most excellent Brāhmaṇ, the Yogī Viññāneśvara.

2. For which learned man is this comment on the sage Yājñavalkya's Institutes not particularly beneficial ? Though the number of its words has been carefully measured, it contains a great quantity of matter and pours nectar into the ears (of the hearers).

3. I have composed this Commentary, called Mitākṣarā, in words, which, though few, are full of meaning, which are eloquent and of pleasant import.

4. There has not been, nor is, nor will be on earth a city, comparable to Kalyāṇapura ; no king has been seen or heard of, who is comparable to the illustrious Vikramārka ; nothing else that exists in this Kalpa bears comparison with the learned Viññāneśvara. May these three, who resemble (three) Kalpa creepers, be endowed with stability.

5. Mayest thou live there, Viññāneśvara, as long as sun and moon endure, thou, who art the creator of words that distil honey, and form the limit of the wonder of the learned, who art the giver of great wealth, since that is the object of the multitude of the needy, who meditate on the form of the conqueror of Mura (Krishṇa), who art the conqueror of the foes, that reside in the body (the senses).

6. Up to the bridge of the famous (Rāma), the best of the scions of Raghu's race, up to the lord of mountains, up to the western ocean, whose waves are raised by shoals of nimble fishes, and up to the eastern ocean, may the lord Vikramāditya protect this world, as long as moon and stars endure.

7. This intelligible Mitākṣarā, which was composed by Viññāneśvara, contains twelve thousand granthas (i.e. 12,000 × 16 syllables).



THE  
MITĀKSARĀ.  
BOOK FIRST—ACHĀRA ADHYĀYA.  
CHAPTER FIRST—INTRODUCTION.

*Vijñāneśvara's Salutation.*

मिताक्षरा ॥

धर्माधर्मौ तद्विपाकास्त्रयोऽपि क्लेशाः पञ्च प्राणिनामायतन्ते ।  
यस्मिन्नेतैर्नो परामृष्ट ईशो यस्तं वन्दे विष्णुमोक्षारवाच्यम् ॥

He in whom there exist under complete subjugation, the Dharma and non-Dharma, with their three-fold results, as well as the five kinds of pains, which overpower all living beings and who is untouched by all these, is the Lord. I praise that Viṣṇu who is designated by the syllable Om.

BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S SALUTATION.

Lakṣmī, the mother of children bows down to the Beloved-of-Lakṣmī (Viṣṇu) and to Śrī Lakṣmī. Her father was Mahādeva by name, learned in the Vedas upto Jaṭā Pāṭha, well versed in the meaning of Śrutis and Smṛitis: a Dikṣita Brahman and honored by kings. Her mother was Umā, virtuous as Umā (the wife of Śiva). Mahādeva was son of Kṛiṣṇa, son of Ganeśa, of Mudgala clan and Kheraḍa country. She, the wife of Vaidyanātha Pāyaguṇḍa, devoted to her husband, composes this Mitākṣarā Vivṛiti for the instruction of all.

BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Of the four aims of life—religious merit (dharma), wealth (artha), pleasure (kāma) and Release (Mokṣa)—the mokṣa is the Summum Bonum, the highest aim, the Parama-Puruṣārtha, and it is universally so acknowledged by all Revelations (Śruti), Traditions (Smṛiti), Legends (Purāṇas), &c. For the attainment of this, Yoga is the specific means. Having resolved this in mind, Vijñāneśvara undertakes to comment upon that Dharma-Śāstra in which Yoga teachings predominate and which is composed by the Yogīśvara Yājñavalkya who is constantly immersed in Yoga. The four aims like dharma, &c., are under the control of the Lord, and without His grace they cannot be acquired or understood, hence Vijñāneśvara reverently bows to the Lord, before composing his commentary. The salutation is couched in words which show the intimate acquaintance of the commentator with Yoga. [Thus he describes the Lord in the almost identical terms of the Yoga Sūtra I. 24 :—“A being free from Kleśa and Karma-vipāka, &c.” The word Kleśa is a technical term of Yoga and is defined in Sūtra II. 3. The word

bhoga is similarly a technical term of Yoga defined in II. 13.] This salutation shows that Viṣṇāneśvara is himself a Yogin and therefore competent to comment on the Dharma-Sāstra of Yogī Yājñavalkya.

The good and evil acts—dharma and adharma—lawful and unlawful deeds—constitute the seed or Karmāsaya, from which grow the three-fold results, namely jāti (high or low birth as a Brāhmaṇa, &c.) Āyu or life period (long or short), and bhoga (suffering). The five pains are Nescience, Egoism, Love, Hatred, and Death-Terror. The Nescience is false belief, taking the impure for pure, the non-eternal for eternal, the sorrowful for bliss, and the non-Self for the Self. (See Yoga aphorisms II. 3 to 13.). Asmitā or Egoism consists in thinking that there is no soul other than the bodies, &c. The word *āyatante* means exist under complete control. Though these are under the control sometimes of the Jīvas also, yet they are not full master of them and are *influenced* by them: the Lord is not influenced by these nor conditioned by them. The reason of His not being touched by these is because He is the Lord, the Īśa: the controller of all, whose will is Omnipotent. His name is Om (Yoga Sūtra, I. 27). So also Yogī Yājñavalkya says:—The God whose form is invisible, who is comprehended only through love, who is pure Intelligence, is designated by Om. He becomes gracious when called by that name of Om.

*Viṣṇāneśvara's Fore-word.*

मिताक्षरा ॥

याज्ञवल्क्यमुनिभाषितं मुहुर्विश्वरूपविकटोक्तिविस्तृतम् ।

धर्मशास्त्रमृजुभिर्मिताक्षरैर्बालबोधविधये विविच्यते ॥

That Institute of the sacred laws which was ordained briefly by the sage Yājñavalkya and which was expounded by Viśvarūpa in a profuse and profound commentary, is now being explained in an easy and concise (Mitākṣarā) style, for the comprehension of children (of men of small understanding.)

BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

"The Dharma-Sāstra" or the Institute of the Sacred laws means the Yājñavalkya Saṃhitā, from which may be acquired the knowledge relating to Dharma. The word 'pijubhiḥ' 'easy' means clear and distinct. The word "Mitākṣaraiḥ" is a Bahuvrihi compound: the words (akṣara) of which are measured (mita)—measured-syllabled. The word 'vivichyate' ('is being explained') means making clear by showing the harmony of this Smṛiti with the other Smṛitis, or as supplying some hiatus in other Smṛitis, or where there is a conflict, to declare that there is an option. The word 'muḥu' 'profuse' means again and again; the word 'vikāṭa,' 'profound' means very deep: the word 'ukti' (commentary or saying) means explanation. This shows that the Mitākṣarā is an abridgment of Viśvarūpa's larger work: and it is meant for those who are not competent to understand the bigger work and are called bāla or children or men of small understanding. Those whose age is of eight years or so and have been just initiated, are called here bāla. They should learn their duties from it.

मिताक्षरा ॥

याज्ञवल्क्यशिष्यः कश्चित्प्रश्नोत्तररूपं याज्ञवल्क्यप्रणीतं धर्मशास्त्रं संक्षिप्य कथयामास,  
यथा मनुनेक्तं भृगुः । तस्य चायमाद्यः श्लोकः ।

## MITĀKṢARĀ.

Some pupil of Yājñavalkya having abridged the Institutes of the Sacred Laws composed by Yājñavalkya, recites it in the form of question and answer, as the Institutes of Manu were recited by Bṛiṣu\*; and its first verse is this:—

## BĀLAMBHATṬA'S GLOSS.

The Yājñavalkya Saṁhitā composed in verse is the work of some disciple of Yājñavalkya, who has abridged the original Sacred Institute of his master, and teaches it to his own pupils. This is not a unique case, the original Institutes of Manu were abridged by Bṛiṣu, and this is the Manu Saṁhitā that we now know. Thus we read in Manu (I. 58, &c.): “But he having composed these Institutes of Sacred Law, himself taught them, according to the rule, to me alone in the beginning: next I taught them to Marichi and the other sages. Bṛiṣu here will fully recite to you these Institutes.” “The wise Manu sprung from the Self-existent, composed these Institutes” (Ibid, v. 102). “Bowling to Svayambhu Brahmā of measureless energy I shall recite the various ancient Dharmas taught by Manu” (Ibid 1. 1. as in Jolly). This shows that the Institutes of Manu are the work of a follower of Manu: and such is the case with this Yājñavalkya Saṁhitā.

## YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE I

योगीश्वरं याज्ञवल्क्यं संपूज्य मुनयोऽब्रुवन् ।

वर्णाश्रमेतराणां नो ब्रूहि धर्मानशेषतः ॥ १ ॥

योगीश्वर Yogiśvaram, to the Lord of yogis. याज्ञवल्क्यं Yājñavalkyam, to Yājñavalkya. संपूज्यं Sampūjya, worshipping properly by mind, body and action. मुनयः Munayah, the sages. अब्रुवन् Abruvan, said. वर्णाश्रम Varṇāśrama, castes (Brahmins, etc.) and stages (Brahmacharya, &c.) इतराणां Itarāṇām, of others, i. e., of the mixed castes. नः Naḥ, us. ब्रूहि Brūhi, tell. धर्मान् Dharmān, the duties. अशेषतः Aśeṣataḥ, fully, without any remainder.

1. The sages having worshipped fully Yājñavalkya, the best of the yogis, asked:—“Tell us completely the Dharmas of classes, of orders and of others.”—1.

## मिताक्षरा ॥

‘योगिनां’ सनकादीनाम् ‘ईश्वरः’ भेष्टस्तं याज्ञवल्क्यं ‘संपूज्य’ मनोवाक्कायकर्मभिः पूजयित्वा ‘मुनयः’ सामश्रवः प्रभृतयः श्रवणधारणयोग्या ‘अब्रुवन्’ उक्तवन्तः ‘धर्मान्’ ‘नः’ अस्मभ्यं ब्रूहीति । कथम् ? ‘अशेषतः’ कात्स्न्येन । केषां ? ‘वर्णाश्रमेतराणां’ वर्णा ब्राह्मणदयः, आश्रमा ब्रह्मचारिप्रभृतयः, इतरे अनुलोमप्रतिलोमजाता मूर्द्धावसिकादयः । इतरशब्दस्य द्वन्द्वे चेति सर्वनामसंज्ञाप्रतिषेधः । अत्र च धर्मशब्दः षड्विधस्मार्त-धर्मविषयः । तद्यथा, वर्णधर्मः आश्रमधर्मः वर्णाश्रमधर्मः गुणधर्मः निमित्तधर्मः साधारण-

\* See Manu I, 58--60 for how Bṛiṣu recites the Institutes composed by Manu.



धर्मश्चेति । तत्र वर्णधर्मा, “नित्यं मद्यं ब्राह्मणेन वर्जयेत्” इत्यादिः । आश्रमधर्मः अग्नीन्धनभैक्षचर्यादिः । वर्णाश्रमधर्मः “पालाशो दण्डो ब्राह्मणस्य” इत्येवमादिः । गुणधर्मः शास्त्रोपाभिषेकादिगुणयुक्तस्य राज्ञः प्रजापालनादिः । निमित्तधर्मो विहिताकरणप्रतिषिद्धसेवननिमित्तं प्रायश्चित्तम् । साधारणो धर्मः अहिंसादिः । “न हिंस्यात्सर्वा भूतानि” इत्याचाण्डालं साधारणो धर्मः । श्रुत्युक्त-“शौचाचारांश्च शिक्षयेत्” इत्याचार्यकरणविधिप्रयुक्तत्वाद्धर्मशास्त्राध्ययनस्य प्रयोजनादिकथनं नातीवोपयुज्यते । तत्र चायं क्रमः । प्रागुपनयनात्कामचारकामवादकामभक्षाः, ऊर्ध्वमुपनयनात्प्राग्वेदाध्ययनोपक्रमत्वाद्धर्मशास्त्राध्ययनम् । ततो धर्मशास्त्रविहितयमनियमोपेतस्य वेदाध्ययनम्, ततस्तदर्थजिज्ञासा, ततस्तदनुष्ठानमिति । तत्र यद्यपि धर्मार्थकाममोक्षाः शास्त्रेणानेन प्रतिपाद्यन्ते तथापि धर्मस्य प्राधान्याद्धर्मग्रहणम् । प्राधान्यं च धर्ममूलत्वादितरेषाम् । न च वक्तव्यं धर्ममूलोऽर्थोऽर्थमूलो धर्म इति अविशेष इति । यतोऽर्थमन्तरेणापि जपतपस्तीर्थयात्रादिना धर्मेनिष्पत्तिः, अर्थलेशोऽपि न धर्ममन्तरेणेति । एवं काममोक्षावपीति ॥१॥

### MITĀKṢARĀ.

“Of the yogis” like Sanaka, and the rest. “Īśvara” best: (and not *lord*). Worshipped “fully” with mind, speech, and bodily deeds, the said Yājñyavalkya. “The sages” like Sāmaśrava and others (who are) capable of understanding and retaining (the scriptures). “Asked” said. “Tell us the Dharmas” How? “Completely”:—comprehensively. (Of whom? “of classes, orders and others.”)

\* “Classes” (Varṇas) like those of Brāhmaṇas, &c. “Orders” (Āśramas) as Brahmachāri (student, Gṛihastha, householder, &c.), “Itara” others; mixed classes, called anuloma (born of wives lower in caste than the husband) and pratiloma (born of females higher in caste than the father); such as Murdhâvasikta, &c.

The word “Itara” (other) has not been treated as a pronoun on account of the grammatical rule dvande cha (Pāṇini, Chap. I, sec. I, sūtra 31, by which the pronouns like Itara, &c., when coming in Dvanda compounds are declined like substantives.)

Here (in the above question) the word dharma means the six topics of Dharma of which the Smṛitis treat. Thus (1) the Varṇa-dharma or the law (or duty) of castes; (2) the “Āśrama” Dharma or the law of orders; (3) the “Varṇâ-śrama-Dharma”—or the law of the orders of particular castes; (4) the “Guṇa-Dharma” the law (or duty) of persons endowed with peculiar qualities; (5) the Nimitta-Dharma or the law of particular occasions; and (6) the Sâdhâraṇa-Dharma or the general law.

The Varṇa-Dharma or the duties relating to classes are such as “Let a Brāhmaṇa always abstain from wine,” &c.

The Âśrama-Dharma or the duties of orders are such as treat of fire, fuel and begging of alms, &c.

The Varṇâśrama-Dharma or the duties relating both to classes and orders, are such as a Brâhmaṇa student of the Vedas should carry a staff of Palâśa wood, &c.

The Guṇa-Dharma (the special duties) are such as—"It is the highest duty of a king who has been duly anointed and the rest, according to scriptures, to protect the subjects, &c."

The Nimitta-Dharma (or secondary duties) are such as, penances which are occasioned by omitting to perform what is commanded or committing what is forbidden.

The Sâdhâraṇa-Dharma (or the general duties) are such as harmlessness, &c. "Do not injure any living being," &c., which are the general duties (of all men) down to Chaṇḍâlas.

Because the revealed text "Let him be taught the rites of purification" (v. 15) is a precept (*vidhi*) for employing an âchârya (teacher, to teach the Dharma Śâstra), the necessity of studying the Dharma Śâstras need not be much dilated upon.

This is, however, the order in which it should be studied. Before Upanayana (or investiture with the sacred thread) one is free to act as he likes, speak what he likes and eat what he likes.\* After Upanayana but before the beginning of the study of the Vedas, the Dharma Śâstras are to be taught. After that the Vedas should be studied, accompanied by forbearance (*yama*) and religious observances (*niyama*) as laid down in the Dharma Śâstra.† After that its meaning should be learned; after that its *Anuṣṭhâna* or acting upon it practically.

Though Dharma (religion), wealth, pleasure and emancipation are all treated of or demonstrated in this Scripture, yet Dharma, being the chief of all these, is specially mentioned, by calling it a Dharma Śâstra, and Dharma is supreme, because all the others have their foundation in it. It ought not to be said that "Dharma is the root of wealth, and wealth is the root of Dharma and so there is no difference between these two." Because without wealth works of Dharma can be done, such as *japa* (muttering silently the name of the Deity), austerities, pilgrimages, &c. But without Dharma there can be not a particle of wealth. Such

\* Cf. Gautama, Chapter II, Verse 1:—"Before initiation a child may follow its inclinations in behaviour, speech and eating." See Manu II, 69.

† Forbearance consists of not killing, veracity, not stealing, continence and not coveting. Religious observances are purification, contentment, austerity, prayer and persevering devotion to the Lord.

is also the case with *kāma* (pleasure) and *Mokṣa* (emancipation, i. e., they are also dependent on Dharma.)

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 2.

मिथिलास्थः स योगीन्द्रः क्षणं ध्यात्वाऽब्रवीन्मुनीन् ।

यस्मिन्देशे मृगः कृष्णस्तस्मिन्धर्मान्निबोधत ॥ २ ॥

मिथिलास्थः Mithilāsthaḥ, seated in Mithilā, residing at Mithilā. सः Saḥ, He, i. e., Yājñavalkya. योगीन्द्रः Yogīndraḥ, the greatest among the Yogis. क्षणं Kṣaṇam, for a while. ध्यात्वा Dhyātvā, meditating. अब्रवीन् Abravit, told. मुनीन् Munīn, the sages. यस्मिन् Yasmin, in that. देशे Deśe, country. मृगः Mṛigaḥ, antelope. कृष्णः Kṛṣṇa, black. तस्मिन् Tasmin, there. धर्मान् Dharmān, Dharmas. निबोधत Nibodhata, to be performed, know ye.

2.—That best of the Yogis seated in Mithilā, thought for a short time, and then said to the sages :—“In what country there is black antelope, Dharmas must be known (performed) there.—2.

मिताक्षरा

एवं पृष्ठः, मिथिला नाम नगरी तत्र स्थितः, ‘स’ याज्ञवल्क्यो योगीश्वरः ‘क्षणं ध्यात्वा’ किञ्चित्कालं मनः समाधाय एते श्रवणाधिकारिणा विनयेन पृच्छन्तीति युक्तमेतेभ्यो वक्तुमित्युक्तवान् मुनीन् । किं ? ‘यस्मिन्देशे मृगः कृष्णस्तस्मिन्धर्मान्निबोधतेति’ । कृष्णसारो मृगो यस्मिन्देशे स्वच्छन्दं विहरति तस्मिन्देशे वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणा धर्मा अनुष्ठेया नान्यत्रेत्यभिप्रायः ॥ २ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

Being so asked, that best of the Yogis, Yājñavalkya, dwelling in the city called Mithilā, “thought for a short time” or concentrated his mind for a short time, considering within himself, that as these enquirers deserve hearing this Dharma Śāstra and they ask with humility, so it is proper to tell them, and therefore he said to the sages :—“In what country there is black antelope, in that Dharma must be known.” The country in which the black, the spotted antelope, freely roams, in that country the Dharmas which will be described hereinafter, are to be practised. The sense being that they should not be practised anywhere else.\*

*The Sources of Law.*

मिताक्षरा ॥

शौचाचारांश्च शिक्षयेदित्याचार्यस्य धर्मशास्त्राध्यापनविधिः, शिष्येण तदध्ययनं कर्तव्यमिति कुतोऽवगम्यतइत्यत आह ।

\* See Manu II, 28 : “That land where the black antelope naturally roams, one must know to be fit for the performance of sacrifices.”

“Let him be taught the rites of purification” (v. 15) is the precept enjoining the Âchârya to teach the Dharma Śâstra. From what, however, is it concluded that a pupil must learn it? The author replies.

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 3.

**पुराणन्यायमीमांसाधर्मशास्त्राङ्गमिश्रिताः ।**

**वेदाः स्थानानि विद्यानां धर्मस्य च चतुर्दश ॥ ३ ॥**

पुराण Purāṇa, the Purāṇas. न्याय Nyāya, logic. मीमांसा Mimāṃsā, exegetics. धर्मशास्त्र Dharma Śâstra, the Institutes of sacred Law. अङ्ग Aṅga, the six members or limbs of the Vedas, i.e. Phonetics, Rituals, Grammar, Lexicology, Prosody, and Astronomy. मिश्रिताः Miśritāḥ, mixed. वेदाः Vedāḥ, the four Vedas. स्थानानि Sthānāni, seats, sources. विद्यानां Vidyānām, of the learnings. धर्मस्य Dharmasya, of Dharma. च Cha, and. चतुर्दश Chatur-daśa, fourteen.

3.—The Purāṇas, the Nyāya, the Mimāṃsā, the Dharma Śâstra, together with the Aṅgas and the Vedas are the fourteen seats or sources of sciences and of Dharma.—3.

**मिताक्षरा**

‘पुराणं’ ब्राह्मादि । ‘न्यायः’ तर्कविद्या । ‘मीमांसा’ वेदवाक्यविचारः । ‘धर्मशास्त्रं’ मानवादि । ‘अङ्गानि’ व्याकरणादीनि षट् । एतैरुपेताश्चत्वारो वेदाः । ‘विद्याः’ पुरुषार्थसाधनज्ञानानि । तासां स्थानानि च चतुर्दश, धर्मस्य च चतुर्दश ‘स्थानानि’ हेतवः । एतानि च त्रैवर्णिकैरध्येतव्यानि तदन्तर्भूतत्वाद्धर्मशास्त्रमप्यभ्येतव्यम् । तत्रैतानि ब्राह्मणेन विद्याप्राप्तये धर्मानुष्ठानाय चाधिगन्तव्यानि, क्षत्रियवैश्याभ्यां धर्मानुष्ठानाय । तथा च शंखेन विद्यास्थानान्यनुक्रम्योक्तम् । एतानि ब्राह्मणेऽधिकुरुते स च वृत्तिं दर्शयतीतरेषामिति ।

मनुरपि द्विजातीनां धर्मशास्त्राध्ययनेऽधिकारो ब्राह्मणस्य प्रवचने नान्यस्येति दर्शयति ।

निषेकादिश्मशानान्तो मन्त्रैर्यस्योदितो विधिः ।

तस्य शास्त्रेऽधिकारोऽस्मिन् ज्ञेयो नान्यस्य कस्यचित् ॥ २ । १६

विदुषा ब्राह्मणेनेदमभ्येतव्यं प्रयत्नतः ।

शिष्येभ्यश्च प्रवक्तव्यं सम्यङ् नान्येन केनचित् ॥ इति ॥ १ । १० ३ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

“The Purāṇas,” such as Brâhma Purāṇa, &c. “The Nyāya” or the science of argumentation. “The Mimāṃsā” or the interpretation of the saying of the Vedas. “The Dharma Śâstra” such as those of Manu, &c. “The Aṅgas” are the six sciences, viz., Grammar, &c. Over and above these are the four “Vedas.” The sciences are the knowledge by which any human object is accomplished, and their sources are

fourteen. "The seats" or sources of Dharma are also fourteen. These must be studied by the three classes. The Dharma Śāstra must also be studied, because it is included among the above enumeration.

The Brāhmaṇa must acquire these, in order to instruct others and to practise Dharma. The Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas must study these in order to practise Dharma only. So Śaṅkha, after having enumerated the seats of sciences, ordains "A Brāhmaṇa must learn all these and he should impart knowledge to the others."

Manu has also shown that the twice-born alone are entitled to study the Dharma Śāstras and a Brāhmaṇa alone can teach them and no one else.

"Know that he for whom (the performance of) the ceremonies beginning with the rite of impregnation (garbhādhāna) and ending with the funeral rite (antyeṣṭi) is prescribed, while sacred formulas are being recited, is entitled to study these Institutes but no other man whatsoever." (II. 16.)

"A learned Brāhmaṇa must carefully study them, and he must duly instruct his pupils in them, but nobody else shall do it." (I. 103.)

#### BĀLAMABHĀṬTA'S GLOSS.

The characteristics of a Purāṇa are thus described in the Matsya Purāṇa:—"The Purāṇas have five topics, (they deal with) creation, dissolution, dynasties, the Manvantaras and the career of the Kings of the solar and lunar dynasties." (Matsya Purāṇa LIII. 64.)

"The knowers of the Purāṇas say that there are eighteen Purāṇas:—1. Pādma, 2. Brāhma, 3. Vaiṣṇava, 4. Śaiva, 5. Bhāgavata, 6. Nāradiya, 7. Mārkaṇḍeya, the seventh, 8. Āgneya, the eighth, 9. Bhaviṣya, the ninth, 10. Brahmavaivarta, the tenth, 11. Liṅgam, the eleventh, 12. Vārāha, the twelfth, 13. Skānda, the thirteenth, 14. Vāmana, the fourteenth, 15. Kaurma, the fifteenth, 16. Mātsya, 17. Gāruḍa, and 18. Brahmāṇḍa.

"The story of Naraśiṃha told in the Padma Purāṇa consisting of 18,000 verses is called Nārasimha Purāṇa. The description of the greatness of Nandā, recited by Kārtikeya is called Nandā Purāṇa among mankind. That which is recited to Sāmba, containing prophecies, is called Sāmba Purāṇa, O sages. Thus also is to be found therein the Āditya Purāṇa." (Matsya LIII. 59-62.)

"Know ye, O best of the twice-born, that the Purāṇas other than the eighteen mentioned above, have their origin in these eighteen." (Ibid, 63).

[The Matsya Purāṇa then goes on to give a short description of these eighteen Purāṇas.]

1. *The Brāhma*.—"The Pūrāṇa recited of yore by Brahmā to Marīchi is called the Brāhma Purāṇa, and it consists of 13,000 verses (Ibid, v. 12.)

2. *The Pādma*.—"The Pādma Purāṇa describes the cosmic Golden Lotus (from which the universe came out). The wise call it Pādma, because it describes the Lotus. It contains 55,000 verses. (Ibid, v. 14.)

3. *The Viṣṇu P.*—"That Purāṇa is known as the Vaiṣṇava (the Viṣṇu Purāṇa) in which Parāśara describes all Dharmas, beginning with a description Varāha Kalpa. (Ibid, v. 16). It contains 23,000 verses." [The Viṣṇu Dharmottara should be taken as a portion of the

well-known Viṣṇu Purāṇa in order to make up the 23,000 verses. Otherwise the Viṣṇu Purāṇa has only 7,000 verses.]

4. *The Śiva P.*—"The Śaiva or Vāyu Purāṇa is that in which the Mahātma Vāyu describes fully the Dharmas, in the course of a description of the Śveta Kalpa, containing the mātmya of Rudra. It consists of 24,000 verses." (Ibid, 18).

5. *The Bhāgavata P.*—"The Bhāgavata Purāṇa is that which begins with Gāyatrī, and contains description of manifold Dharmas, together with the story of the death of Vṛitra. The Bhāgavata contains a description of those degraded men who exist in the Sārasvata Kalpa. It gives an account of that kalpa. It contains 18,000 verses." (Ibid, v. 18-22.)

6. *The Nārada P.*—"The Nāradya Purāṇa is that wherein Nārada tells all Dharmas of Brihat Kalpa. It contains 53,000 verses. (Ibid, v. 23.)

7. *The Mārkaṇḍeya P.*—"The Mārkaṇḍeya is said to be the Purāṇa told to the birds. It contains description of Dharma and Adharma and has 9,000 verses." (Ibid, 26).

8. *The Agni Purāṇa.*—"The Agni Purāṇa is recited by Agni to Vasiṣṭha, describing the story of Iśana Kalpa. It contains 16,000 verses and is the giver of the fruit of all sacrifices." (Ibid, 28 and 29).

9. *The Bhaviṣya P.*—"The Bhaviṣya is the Purāṇa in which the four-faced Brahmā, the Protector of the world, describes the greatness of Āditya, and in the course of the narration of Aghora Kalpa, recites to Manu, the creation and sustenance of the world and characteristics of various kinds of beings. It consists of 14,500 verses. It contains five Parvas:—1. Brāhma Parva, 2. Vaiṣṇava Parva, 3. Vajra Parva, 4. Tvāṣṭra Parva, 5. Prātibhāṣya Parva.

10. *The Brahma Vaivarta P.*—"The Brahma Vaivarta is that Purāṇa in which beginning with the description of Rathantara Kalpa, Śavarṇi tells Nārada the mātmya of Kṛiṣṇa, and in which Brahmā recites the actions of Varāha. It contains 18,000 verses." (Ibid, 33, 34.)

11. *The Liṅga P.*—"That Purāṇa which the God Maheśvara revealed standing in the column (liṅga) of fire, that a man may attain Dharma (virtue), Kāma (pleasure), artha (wealth) and emancipation, and which begins with a description of Agneya Kalpa is the Liṅga Purāṇa. It is so described by Brahmā himself. It contains 11,000 verses: (Ibid, v. 37).

12. *The Varāha P.*—"The Purāṇa told by Viṣṇu to the Earth, in the course of the description of Mānava Kalpa, beginning with the praise of the Great Boar, containing 24,000 verses is called the Vārāha Purāṇa." (Ibid, 38).

13. *The Skanda P.*—"The Purāṇa told by the six-faced (Kārtikeya) in the course of the description of Kim Puruṣa Kalpa, containing the Maheśvara Dharmas, and many stories is called the Skānda Purāṇa. It contains 81,101 verses," (Ibid v. 42).

14. *The Vāmana P.*—"Where beginning with the mātmya of the Dwarf-Incarnation, Brahmā relates fully the three-fold end of man, that is called the Vāmana Purāṇa. It contains 10,000 verses, appertaining to Kārma Kalpa." (Ibid, 45).

15. *The Kūrma P.*—"Where in the course of the story of Indradumna, the Lord Janārdana, in the form of a Tortoise, recited the greatness of the Rṣis, that Purāṇa is known as the Kaurma by the wise. It contains 17,000 verses, and is appertaining to Lakṣmi Kalpa." (Ibid, v. 47).

16. *The Matsya P.*—"In the beginning of the kalpa, Janārdana, with a view to promulgate the revelations (Śrutis), assuming the form of a fish described to Manu the story of Nara-Simha, &c. It contains the account of seven kalpas (?) O sages! know that to be the Mātsya. It has 14,000 verses, (Ibid, v. 50).

17. *The Garuḍa P.*—"That which describes the birth of Garuḍa from the Cosmic Egg in the Gāruḍa Kalpa and which is recited by Kṛiṣṇa, is called Gāruḍa Purāṇa and it contains 18,001 verses," (Ibid, v. 52).

18. *The Brahmāṇḍa P.*—“That which begins with a description of the mahātmya of the Cosmic Egg and which contains 12,200 verses ; and wherein are the descriptions of many future Kalpas, is the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa.

The Brāhma Purāṇa is called also the Ādi Purāṇa. The Śiva Purāṇa is called also the Vāyu Purāṇa : as we find in the Kālikā Purāṇa :—“The Śaiva is the Purāṇa told by Vāyu, &c.”

The Agni Purāṇa is called Vahni Purāṇa also in the enumeration of the Purāṇas.

*The two Bhāgavata Purāṇas.* Which is the Purāṇa and which the Upa-Purāṇa.—[There are two Purāṇas, under the name of Bhāgavata 1. the Viṣṇu Bhāgavata or the well-known Bhāgavata ; and 2. the Devī Bhāgavata. There is a controversy as to which of these is the Purāṇa, and which the Upa-purāṇa for both cannot be Purāṇas. Bālabhaṭṭa appears to hold the Viṣṇu Bhāgavata to be the original.]

We find in the Kālikā Purāṇa :—“This Kālikā Purāṇa has its root in the Bhāgavata.” This Bhāgavata is an Upa-Purāṇa, as will be shown later on.

*Opponent's view.*—But some, however, think that the Devī Bhāgavata is the Purāṇa, and not the well-known Bhāgavata : for in the well-known Bhāgavata we do not meet with any description of the Śārasvata Kalpa, (which is the characteristic of this Purāṇa according to the description above given in the Matsya Purāṇa).

Moreover in the Matsya Purāṇa (Li. v. 69) we read :—“Vyāsa, the son of Satyavatī, having composed the eighteen Purāṇas, finished with the composing of Mahābhārata, as an explanation of these.” While in the well-known Bhāgavata Purāṇa we find that it was composed (not prior to the Mahābhārata, but) after the Mahābhārata : because Vyāsa did not feel satisfaction in the Mahābhārata. Moreover the Viṣṇu Bhāgavata contradicts the Mahābhārata. In the latter in the Śānti Parva, Bhīma in his discourse on Dharma in general, tells Yudhiṣṭhira the nature of Mukti or Release as taught by Śuka, and says that Śuka had attained Mukti. Why should then Vyāsa say in the Bhāgavata that Śuka should relate it to Parīkṣit, when Śuka had already attained Nirvāṇa and could not come back?

In the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iii. 17. 41) in describing the Buddha Avatara, we read : “Hari gave them Buddha, the incarnation of illusion and delusion.” [The birth of Buddha is described here as from the body of Viṣṇu]. But in the first Skanda (of the V. Bhāgavata) the Buddha is described as identical with Jina born in the family of Ikṣvāku. This contradicts Viṣṇu Purāṇa. For these and other reasons, even Śrīdhara, the commentator on (Viṣṇu) Bhāgavata expresses his doubt.

*Reply.*—As a matter of fact, though we do not find in it a description of Śārasvata Kalpa, yet we find in it the description of the rise of degraded men : (so it satisfies one of the conditions of the Matsya Purāṇa). Though it was composed after the Mahābhārata, yet there is no conflict with the description of the Matsya Purāṇa where the Mahābhārata is described as being composed after the Purāṇas. Vyāsa composed all the eighteen Purāṇas before the Mahābhārata, but published only the seventeen of them : while this Bhāgavata was published after that, &c.

[Bālabhaṭṭa answers all the above objections and comes to the conclusion that the arguments of the opponent are not very conclusive and that the weight of authority is in favour of the Viṣṇu Bhāgavata being the original Purāṇa.]

The Saura Purāṇa is an Upa-Purāṇa that has branched out of Brahma Purāṇa.

*Three kinds of Purāṇas.*—We further read in the Matsya Purāṇa :—“In the Sāttvika Kalpas, the glory of Hari predominates ; in the Rājasa Kalpas, the predominance is of Brāhmā ; and in the Tāmasa Kalpas, the preponderance is of Agni and Śiva : and in the miscellaneous Kalpas, the glory of the Piṭris and Sarasvatī is sung. (Matsya Li. 67 and 68).

*The two Viṣṇu Purāṇas.*—The Viṣṇu Purāṇa is also of two sorts, one a Purāṇa and the other an Upa-Purāṇa

*The total number of verses.*—The total number of verses in the Purāṇas and Itihāsas is given in the Matsya Purāṇa. After describing the Mahābhārata it goes on to say :—“It is composed in one lac verses and is a summary of the meaning of the Vedas. That which was composed by Vālmiki (is also an Itihāsa). There are altogether 5 lacs and 25 thousand verses in all these.”

### THE UPA-PURĀṆAS.

*List from the Kūrma Purāṇa.*—Now we shall describe the Upa-Purāṇas, enumerated in the list of Upa-Smṛitis in the Hemādri. There the following quotation of Kūrma Purāṇa is given :—“Other Upa-Purāṇas have also been recited by the sages. The first is that recited by (1) Sanat Kumāra, then (2) the Nārasiṃha; then (3) Kapila, then (4) the Mānava (or Vāmana), then (5) the Uśanas, (6) the Brahmanḍa, (7) the Vāruṇa, (8) the Kālikā, (9) the Māhesvara, (10) the Sāmba, (11) the Saura, (12) the Pārāśara (the Pravara), (13) the Bhāga-vata, (Kūrma I, 15—20.)

*Parāśara's list.*—“The following list of the Upa-Purāṇas is found in the first Adhyāya of the Parāśara Upa-Purāṇa also :—1. the Sanat Kumāra, 2. the Nārasiṃha, 3. the Nāda, 4. the Śiva-Dharma, 5. the Daurvāsa, 6. the Nārādīya, 7. the Kāpila, 8. the Mānava, 9. the Uśanas, 10. the Brahmanḍa, 11. the Vāruṇa, 12. the Kāli Purāṇa, 13. the Vāsiṣṭha, 14. the Laiṅga, 15. the Samba, 16. the Saura, 17. the Pārāśara, 18. the Mārīcha, called also the Bhārgava.

*The authority of the Purāṇas.*—As regards the status of the Purāṇas on points of law, Vyāsa Smṛiti says :—“That is the highest law (Dharma) which is revealed in the Vedas. That is to be known as inferior which is taught in the Purāṇas and the rest. But what is different from these even, calling itself Dharma, must be totally renounced by the wise from a distance, for those scriptures are full of delusion. The knower of the Vedas should perform that which was done by the Rishis of yore : let him practise that with care and diligence, and renounce that which is prohibited by them.”

So also : “There may be a mistake made in understanding some passages of the Vedas by one's own exertion, but when the Rishis have explained them, what doubts can there be to the wise.”

### मिताक्षरा ॥

अस्तु धर्मशास्त्रमध्वेत्यं याज्ञवल्क्यप्रणीतस्यास्य शास्त्रस्य किमायातमित्यत आह—

Let it be that Dharma Śāstras should be studied. But what is the authority of this particular Dharma Śāstra composed by Yājñavalkya? To this the author replies.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSES 4 AND 5.

मन्वत्रिविष्णुहारीतयाज्ञवल्क्योशनोऽङ्गिराः ।

यमापस्तम्बसंवर्ताः कात्यायनबृहस्पती ॥ ४ ॥

पराशरव्यासशङ्खलिखिता दक्षगौतमौ ।

शातातपो वसिष्ठश्च धर्मशास्त्रप्रयोजकाः ॥ ५ ॥

मनु Manu. अत्रि Atri. विष्णु Viṣṇu. हारीत Hārīta. याज्ञवल्क्य Yājñavalkya. उशनः Uśanaḥ, up to this it is one singular compound of six names. अङ्गिराः Aṅgīraḥ. यम Yama. आपस्तम्ब Āpastamba. संवर्ताः Samvartāḥ, it is one compound of three names. कात्यायन Kātyāyana. बृहस्पती Brihaspatī, a compound



of two names. पराशर Parāśara. व्यास Vyāsa शङ्ख Śaṅkha. लिखिताः Likhitaḥ, a compound of four names. दक्ष Dakṣa. गौतमौ Gautamau, a compound of two names शातातपः Śātātapaḥ. वसिष्ठः Vaśiṣṭha. च Cha, and. धर्मशास्त्र Dharmaśāstra, sacred laws. प्रयोजकाः Prayojakāḥ, are the promulgators or makers.

4. Manu, Atri, Viṣṇu, Hārta, Yājñavalkya, Uśanas, Aṅgiras, Yama, Āpastamba, Samvarta, Kātyāyana, Bṛhaspati.—4.

5. Parāśara, Vyāsa, Śaṅkha, Likhita, Dakṣa, Gautama, Śātātapa, and Vasiṣṭha are the promulgators of Dharma Śāstras.—5.

### मिताक्षरा

उशनःशब्दपर्यन्तो द्वन्द्वैकवद्भावः । याज्ञवल्क्यप्रणीतमिदं धर्मशास्त्रमध्येतव्यमित्यभिप्रायः । नेयं परिसंख्या किंतु प्रदर्शनार्थमेतत् । अतो बौधायनादेरपि धर्मशास्त्रत्वमविरुद्धम् । एतेषां प्रत्येकं प्रामाण्येऽपि साकाङ्क्षाणामाकाङ्क्षापरिपूरणमन्यतः क्रियते । विरोधे तु विकल्पः ॥ ४ ॥ ५ ॥

### MITĀKṢARĀ.

Up to the word Uśanas the sentence is a copulative compound inflected in the singular (Dvandvaikavad bhāva.)

This Dharma Śāstra propounded by Yājñavalkya should also be studied, such is the implied meaning of the above passage.

This is not an exhaustive enumeration (parisankhyā) but it is merely illustrative. Therefore the Dharma Śāstras of Baudhāyana and others are not excluded.

As each of these Smṛitis possesses authority, so the points not mentioned by one, may be supplied from the others.

But if one set of institutes contradicts the other, then there is an option (to follow any one of them).\*

### BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Devala gives the following list of the Dharma-Śāstras :—1. Manu, 2. Yama, 3. Vasiṣṭha, 4. Atri, 5. Dakṣa, 6. Viṣṇu, 7. Aṅgirā, 8. Uśanā, 9. Vākpāti, 10. Vyāsa ; 11. Āpastamba, 12. Gautama, 13. Kātyāyana, 14. Nārada, 15. Yājñavalka, 16. Parāśara, 17. Samvarta, 18. Śaṅkha, 19. Hārta, 20. Likhita.

In this list Nārada is an addition, while in the Yājñavalkya's list we have Śātātapa instead.

The Śaṅkha gives the following list :—1. Atri, 2. Bṛhaspati, 3. Uśanas, 4. Āpastamba, 5. Vasiṣṭha, 6. Kātyāyana, 7. Parāśara, 8. Vyāsa, 9. Śaṅkha, 10. Likhita, 11. Samvarta, 12. Gautama, 13. Śātātapa, 14. Hārta, 15. Yājñavalkya, 16. Prachetas and the rest. By the

\* See Manu. II. 14 for conflict of Śruti, &c.

"But when two sacred texts (Śruti) are conflicting both are held to be law ; for both are pronounced by the wise to be valid law."

phrase "and the rest" is meant 17. Budha, 18. Devala, 19. Sumantu, 20. Jamadagni, 21. Viśvāmītra, 22. Prajāpati, 23. Paiṭhīnasi, 24. Pitāmaha, 25. Baudhāyana, 26. Chhāgaleya, 27. Jābāla, 28. Chyavana, 29. Marīchi, 30. Kaśyapa.

In the Bhaviṣya Purāṇa we find the following addressed by Isvara to Guha :— "Having pondered over the texts of the eighteen Purāṇas, O child, and over the texts of the Smṛitis, beginning with Manu and which are thirty-six in number, I now tell thee."

[This shows that the Smṛitis are 36 in number.] The Smṛitis like the 1. Vṛiddha-Sātātapa, 2. Yogi-Yājñavalkya, 3. Vṛiddha-Vasiṣṭha, 4. Vṛiddha-Manu, 5. Laghu-Hārīta, &c., should be included in the well known thirty-six under their original authors. [Thus Manu includes the ordinary and the Vṛiddha Manu, and so on.] Thus Yājñavalkya says (III. 110) "I have declared the science of Yoga."

Ratnākara says : "we find in the Bhaviṣya Purāṇa itself the enumeration of other Smṛitis like Gobhila, Ṛiṣya Śringa, &c., which are over and above the thirty-six, so we conclude that thirty-six does not exhaust the number of Smṛitis, but is only an enumeration made by the Śiṣṭas." Those which are found as Grihya Sūtras and their Pariśiṣṭas, &c., they belong to a different category : like the Purāṇas. As in the Bhaviṣya :—"The Maitrāyaṇīya, the Chhandoga, the Katha, the Āpastamba, the Balvrichas, their Pariśiṣṭas and those called Khilas (are also Smṛitis)."

The Viṣṇu-Dharma, the Śiva-Dharma, the Mahābhārata, and the Rāmāyana and the rest are also to be included among Smṛitis. As says the Bhaviṣya :—"The eighteen Purāṇas, the history of Rāma (Rāmāyana), the Viṣṇu-Dharma-Śāstra, &c., the Śiva-Dharma ; the fifth Veda called the Mahābhārata composed by Kṛiṣṇa-Dvaipāyana, the Sauradharma, the Mānavoṅkta Dharma, are also taken as such by the wise," (adhyāya 4, v. 87-88).

The words "as such" in the above mean that they are also followed by the great men, and are authoritative, because they are not decried or dispraised by any and followed by great men, so they are to be taken also as Smṛitis. The opinion that the Smṛitis are thirty-six only in number, or twenty-four only in number, is held only by some and is contradicted by others, and is not authoritative.

That the Smṛitis are Dharma-Śāstras (Institutes of Sacred Law) we learn from Manu II. 10 where it is said "The Vedas should be known as Śruti ; and the Dharma-Śāstras as Smṛiti."

In Âṅgiras we find :—"The wise say that the following are Upa-Smṛitis :—Jābāli, Nāchiketa, Chhandas, Laugākṣi, Kaśyapa, Vyāsa, Sanat Kumāra, Śatadru, Janaka, Vyāghra, Kātyāyana, Jātukarṇya, Kapiñjala, Baudhāyana, Kapāda, and Viśvāmītra."

In Hemādri Dāna Khaṇḍa the following more are enumerated. "Vatsa, Pāraskara, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Ṛiṣya-śrīṅga, Ātreya, Babhru, Vyāghra, Satyavrata ; Bharadvāja, Gārgya, Kārṣṇājini, Laugākṣi, and Brahma-Sambhava."

The Smṛitis of Prajāpati, Yama, Budha, and Devala which are enumerated in Kalpataru are quoted by Hemādri as authority in the course of other authorities.

The Kalpataru holds that the four sciences mentioned in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (III. 6. 26) as they relate to positive physical sciences should be taken as authority and Dharma in matters worldly. Those sciences are "the Âyurveda (Medicine), the Dhanurveda (Archery), the Gāndharvaveda (Music), and the Artha Śāstra (the science of wealth)—thus the sciences are altogether eighteen" (Viṣṇu Purāṇa, III. 2. 26).

So also in the Śaiva Purāṇa, the Vāyaviya Samhitā, chapter one, it is said : "O Romaharṣaṇa ! O all-knowing ! thou hast obtained through good luck a complete knowledge of all the Purāṇas from Vyāsa. The four Vedas, the six Ângas, the Mīmāṃsā, the Nyāya, the Purāṇa and the Dharma Śāstra are fourteen Vidyās. The Âyurveda (medicine), the Dhanurveda (Archery), the Gandharvaveda (Music) and the Artha Śāstra (the

science of wealth) are the additional four making the Vidyās eighteen. Of all these eighteen Vidyās, treating of different topics, the original author and direct prophet is the Trident-handed Śiva : such is the saying." (Śiva Purāṇa, I. 23).

Though all these are sources of law, yet all of them do not deal with all matters, and sometimes they contradict each other, therefore the commentator says that though each of them is an authority, yet the lacunae of one should be supplied from the other, where one is incomplete; and where they differ there is option. Manu has also taught this option in II. 14. "But when two sacred texts (Śruti) are conflicting, both are held to be law; for both are pronounced by the wise to be valid law.

*The efficient causes of Dharma.*

**मिताक्षरा ॥**

**इदानीं धर्मस्य कारकहेतूनाह ।**

Now the author explains the efficient\* or subjective causes of Dharma (or religious merit.)

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 6.

**देशे कालउपायेन द्रव्यं श्रद्धासमन्वितम् ।**

**पात्रे प्रदीयते यत्तत्सकलं धर्मलक्षणम् ॥ ६ ॥**

देशे Deśe, in place (*i. e.*, where black antelopes roam at large.) काले Kāle, in time (*i. e.*, in due season.) उपायेन Upāyena, by (in) proper manner. द्रव्यं Dravyam, thing, such as cow, &c. श्रद्धा Śraddhā, faith. समन्वितम् Samānvitam, joined with. पात्रे Pātre, in (to) proper person. प्रदीयते Pradiyate, is given. यत् Yat, whatever. तत् Tat, that. सकलं Sakalam, all. धर्मलक्षणम् Dharma lakṣaṇam, producer of Dharma. The word lakṣaṇa here does not mean mark but generator or utpādaka.

6. Whatever thing is fully given in (proper) country, at (proper) time, with (proper) means, accompanied by faith, to (proper) person, that all is the cause of Dharma.—6:

**मिताक्षरा ॥**

‘देशो’ यस्मिन्देशे मृगः कृष्ण इत्युक्तलक्षणः । ‘कालः’ संक्रान्त्यादिः । ‘उपायः’, शास्त्रार्कितिकर्तव्यताकलापः । ‘द्रव्यं’ प्रतिग्रहादिलब्धं गवादि । ‘श्रद्धा’ आस्तिक्यबुद्धिः, तदन्वितं यथा भवति तथा । ‘पात्रं’ न विद्यया इत्येवमादिवक्ष्यमाणलक्षणम् । ‘प्रदीयते’ यथा न प्रत्यावर्तते तथा परस्वत्वापच्यवसानं त्यज्यते । एतद्धर्मस्योत्पादकम् । किमेतावदेव ? नेत्याह । सकलमिति । अन्यदपि शास्त्रोक्तं जातिगुणयागहोमादि तत्सकलं धर्मस्य कारकं, जातिगुणद्रव्यक्रियाभावार्थात्मकं चतुर्विधं धर्मस्य कारकमित्युक्तं भवति । तच्च समस्तं व्यस्तं वा यथाशास्त्रं द्रष्टव्यम् । श्रद्धा सर्वत्रानुवर्ततएव ॥ ६ ॥

\* The word dharma is used in two senses (1) the agent performing the acts which produce dharma—the Kāraka Hetu—the subjective side of dharma, (2) the expository or declaratory side of dharma—the books that declare what acts are productive of dharma—the jñāpaka Hetu. When a person wishing to perform an act is in doubt as to whether it is dharma or not, he should refer to these jñāpaka hetus : and the Parṣad.

## MITAKṢARĀ.

“Country” as is described above—the country in which the black antelope freely roams. “Time” such as Saṅkrānti, &c.

“Means” is the assemblage of all subordinate acts necessary for the completion of a main act, as described in scriptures.

“Thing” obtained by acceptance of gifts, &c., such as cows, &c.

“Faith” belief in orthodoxy or after-life. “Accompanied by faith,” in the manner which results from being accompanied by faith.

“Person” possessed of qualities to be described hereafter, “fitness to receive charity does not arise from knowledge alone, &c.” (verse 200.)

“Given,” *i.e.*, which is not taken back or does not return and which is abandoned till another acquires proprietary right in it.

These are the generators of Dharma. Are these all? The author says that these are not all because he uses the word *sakalam*. Others mentioned in the Scriptures such as caste, quality, sacrifices, fire-offerings, &c., are also efficient causes of Dharma. What is said here is the same as mentioned elsewhere, that the efficient causes of Dharma are four-fold, consisting of caste, quality, substance and action accompanied by faith.\* All or some of them must be taken, according to the occasion, as taught by the scriptures; but faith must accompany them all.

## BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

Are the above-mentioned fourteen *vidyās* the *kāraka-hetu* of Dharma, *i.e.*, do they produce or generate merit: or are they the *jñāpaka-hetu* of Dharma, *i.e.*, merely declaratory of Dharma—showing what is Dharma and what is not. To this the commentator answers that they are *jñāpaka-hetus*; the *kāraka-hetu* is different, and is mentioned in the verse in discussion.

The force of the preposition *pra* in *pradīyate* is to show that the gift must be irrevocable and complete. The word *lakṣaṇam* in the text does not mean the “indicators of Dharma or *jñāpaka*” but the producers of Dharma: and so the commentator explains this word by saying *utpādaka*.

The word ‘*sakala*’ in the Yājñavalkya's text is not useless; for it indicates by implication that other factors not mentioned in the verse are also generators of Dharma.

In the commentary the word ‘*kāraka*’ is used, *tat sakalam dharmasya kārakam*. Another reading is *kāraṇam* or cause. The most prominent producers of Dharma are however, four, namely, *jāti*, *Guṇa*, *dravya* and *kriyā* as mentioned in *Nyāya*.

The word “*bhāvārtha*” in the commentary means *Śraddhā* or faith.

It does not, however, follow that a gift made without *Śraddhā* is useless: for says a text: “Give with faith, give even without faith, give in all conditions.” Cf. *Taitt. Up.*

*The Jñāpaka hetus.*

मिताक्षरा ॥

इदानीं धर्मस्य ज्ञापकहेतूनाह ।

Now the author describes the external sources of law (Dharma) the (*jñāpaka*)—the expounding causes of law.

\* These are technical terms of logic.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 7.

श्रुतिः स्मृतिः सदाचारः स्वस्य च प्रियमात्मनः ।

सम्यक्संकल्पजः कामो धर्ममूलमिदं स्मृतम् ॥ ७ ॥

श्रुतिः Śrutiḥ, the Vedas (revelations). स्मृतिः Smṛtiḥ, the Dharma-Śāstras. सदाचारः Sadāchārah, the practice of good men or custom, usage स्वस्य Svasya one's own. च Cha, and. प्रियम् Priyam, dear. आत्मनः Ātmanah, of the self. सम्यक् Samyak, fully, rightly, not opposed to scriptures. संकल्पजः Saṅkalpajah, result of consideration, result of mature consideration. कामः Kāmah, desire. धर्ममूलम् Dharma-mūlam, the root or evidence, of Dharma इदम् Idam, this. स्मृतम् Smṛitam, declared, remembered traditionally.

7. The Śruti, the Smṛiti, the conduct of good men, what appears pleasant to one's own self, and the desire which springs from a good resolution, are said to be the roots of Dharma.—7.

मिताक्षरा

‘श्रुतिः’ वेदः । ‘स्मृतिः’ धर्मशास्त्रम् । तथा च मनुः,

श्रुतिस्तु वेदो विज्ञेयो धर्मशास्त्रं तु वै स्मृतिः । इति । २ । १० ॥

सदाचारः ‘सतां’ शिष्टानाम् ‘आचारः’ अनुष्ठानं नाशिष्टानाम् । ‘स्वस्य चात्मनः प्रियं’ वैकल्पिके विषये । यथा “गर्भाष्टमेऽष्टमे वाऽब्दे” इत्यादिष्वात्मेच्छैव नियामिका । सम्यक्संकल्पाज्जातः शास्त्राविरुद्धः कामः । यथा मया भोजनव्यतिरेकेणादकं न पातव्यमिति । एते धर्मस्य ‘मूलं’ प्रमाणम् । एतेषां विरोधे पूर्वपूर्वं बलीयस्त्वम् ॥ ७ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

“The Śruti” means the Vedas. “The Smṛiti,” the Institutes of sacred law. As it is said by Manu “the Vedas are known as Śrutis or revelation and the Institutes of the sacred law are known as Smṛitis.” (II.—10.)

“The conduct of good men” the conduct or practice of good or eminent men,\* but not of bad men.

“What to one's own self is pleasant” relates to optional matters (in which there are alternatives, then one is at liberty to select any one) such as “in the eighth year of conception or birth should a Brahmin be

\* The Śiṣṭas (eminent) are defined by Baudhāyana thus:—Śiṣṭas, forsooth, (are those) who are free from envy, free from pride, contented with a store of grain sufficient for ten-days, free from covetousness, and free from hypocrisy, arrogance, greed, perplexity and anger.

“Those are called Śiṣṭas who in accordance with the sacred law, have studied the Vedā, together with its appendages, know how to draw inferences from that, and are able to adduce proofs perceptible by the senses from the revealed texts.” (I. 1. 5 and 6.)

invested with the sacred thread," &c. In such cases one's wish alone is the law (in selecting any one of the alternatives.)

"Desire" which is born of a good resolve and is not opposed to scriptures. Such as "I shall not drink water except at meals."

These are the "roots" or evidences of Dharma. In case of contradiction among these, those stated first are stronger than those which follow.

#### BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The word *svasya* in the verse is said by some to be redundant and used only to fill in the metre: because the word *âtmanah* has the same meaning as *svasya*, both meaning "of the self." But as a matter of fact, the word *âtman* denotes all conscious beings in general, and if the word *svasya* were not used in the text, then *priyamâtnanah* might have been interpreted as meaning what is pleasing to the Supreme Self. Or the use of both *sva* and *âtman* indicates that they are not to be taken as synonyms here. The word 'cha' 'and' is to be read along with *Kâma*.

The word *Sadâchâra* does not mean 'good conduct,' which would have been the meaning, if it were a *karnadhârâya* compound; but the commentator explains it as a *Tat Puruṣa* compound, namely, the conduct of good men. The word '*Satâm*,' 'good men,' is in the plural, showing that if a single good man has done a solitary act which is of doubtful character, that should not be a rule of conduct. The marks of *Śiṣṭas* are given in the *Mahâbhâṣya* on *Priṣadarâdi sūtra* of *Pāṇini* (VI. 3. 109). 'The pleasant to one's own self' is confined only to matters in which option is allowed by law: otherwise the rule would be too wide. The word *samyak* of the verse is explained by the commentator as *Śâstra-aviruddha*—not opposed to scriptures. The word *mûla* in the verse does not mean the progenitor, but evidence or authority.

[The custom or *Sadâchâra*, and the self-imposed law are not however laws strictly so called. They are intuitive laws (*Sâkṣât*) or apparent unwritten laws (*Sâkṣât*). But the direct and pure or *pratyakṣa* laws are those declared in the *Śruti*].

There is however no conflict between the *Sâkṣâtakṛita* and the *Pratyakṣa* laws. The *Pratyakṣa* laws are the *Śrutis* alone. It is the highest authority in matters of Dharma: while the *Smṛitis*, &c., are various sub-divisions of *Śrutis*. Therefore, in case of conflict of these, the first in order of enumeration prevails.

#### मिताक्षरा ॥ देशादिकारकहेतूनामपवादमाह ।

*Mitākṣarâ*.—The author now mentions an exception to the efficient causes of Dharma such as country, &c.

#### YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 8.

इज्याचारदमाहिंसादानस्वाध्यायकर्मणाम् ।

अयं तु परमो धर्मो यद्योगेनात्मदर्शनम् ॥ ८ ॥

*इज्या* *Ijyâ*, worship, performance of Vaidic rites. *आचार* *Âchâra*, good conduct, observance of the *Smṛiti* rules. *दम* *Dama*, control of conduct. *अहिंसा* *Ahimsâ*, harmlessness, not injuring any creature. *दान* *Dâna*, giving alms, charity. *स्वाध्याय* *Svâdhyâya*, study of sacred scriptures. *कर्मणाम्* *Karmanâm*, of actions. *अयं* *Ayam*, this. *तु* *tu*, only. *परमः* *Paramah*, highest. *धर्मः* *Dharmah*, duty. *यत्* *Yat*, that. *योगेन* *Yogena*, through meditation and concentration. *आत्म-दर्शनम्* *Âtma-darśanam*, to see the Self.

8. Of all works (consisting of) sacrifices, or rituals, or control of conduct, or harmlessness, or liberality or the study of the Vedas ; this alone is the highest Dharma (duty) that one should see the Self by Yoga.—8.

मिताक्षरा ॥

इज्यदीनां कर्मणाम् अयमेव परमो धर्मः यत् 'योगेन' बाह्यचित्तवृत्तिनिरोधेनात्मनो 'दर्शनं' याथातथ्यज्ञानम् । योगेनात्मज्ञाने देशादनियमो नास्तीत्यर्थः । तदुक्तम् । "यत्रैकाग्रता तत्राविशेषात्" इति ॥ ८ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

Of works like sacrifices, &c., this alone is the highest Dharma that by "Yoga" alone or by stopping of the functioning of the thinking principle, with regard to external objects, one should see the Self or have the knowledge of reality. The meaning is that in (the practice of) Yoga in order to obtain the knowledge of one's Self, there are no restrictions of country, &c. As it has been said "wherever there is concentration, there exist no restrictions."

BĀLAMBHATṬA'S GLOSS.

The word karma is to be read along with every one of these, such as, Ijyā karma, Âchāra karma, etc. Therefore the commentator says Ijyādīnām Karmaṇām.

Though the word karma comes as the last word of a compound, it, however, is not a Dvandva here. The Dvandva ends with Svādhyāya. While this word karma forms Tat puruṣa compound.

The definition of "Yoga" given by the commentator is almost the same as given by Patañjali (I. 2.) Patañjali defines Yoga as cessation of all functions of the mind ; while Vijñāneśvara limits, for the purposes of Dharma, this universal definition, adding the words "from external objects," i.e., there should be no thought of any external object in the mind.

The "seeing of self" or "Âtma-darśana" means to get true knowledge. For the practice of "Yoga" no restriction of country, caste, etc., is laid down. (Every one can practise yoga in any country. And not only in that country where black antelopes roam). As an authority for this, the commentator quotes Patañjali by saying "where there is a concentration in a person, there the man gets success, irrespective of country, etc."

*Means of adjudication.*

मिताक्षरा ॥ कारकहेतुषु ज्ञापकहेतुषु वा संदेहे निर्ययहेतुमाह ।

Mitākṣarā.—Now the author explains the means of adjudication, whenever there arises a doubt in regard to the efficient (subjective) causes and the expository (or objective) causes of Dharma.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 9.

चत्वारो वेदधर्मज्ञाः पर्षत्त्रैविद्यमेव वा ।

सा ब्रूते यं स धर्मः स्यादेको वाऽध्यात्मवित्तमः ॥ ९ ॥

चत्वारः Chatvāraḥ, four. वेदधर्मज्ञाः Veda-Dharmajñāḥ, versed in the Vedas and Dharma Śāstras. पर्षत् Parṣad, synod. त्रैविद्यम् Traividyaṁ, an assembly of those

who are versed in the three branches of learning. एव Eva, alone. वा Vâ, or. सा Sâ, she, the above mentioned parṣad. ब्रूते Brute, declares. यं Yam, whatever. स Sa, that. धर्मः Dharmah, Dharma. स्यात् Syât, be. एकः Ekah, one. अध्यात्मवित्तमः Adhyâtma-vit-tamah, the best knower of Self.

9. Four persons who know the Vedas and the Dharmas, or who know only the three sciences, constitute a "Parṣad" (a legal assembly.) What it says is Dharma. Or that which even one person, who is best among the knowers of spiritual sciences declares.—9.

### मिताक्षरा

‘चत्वारः’ ब्राह्मणाः वेदधर्मशास्त्रज्ञाः पर्षत् । तिस्रो विद्या अधीयत इति त्रिविद्याः, तेषां समूहस्त्रैविद्यम् । धर्मशास्त्रज्ञत्वमत्राप्यनुवर्तते । तद्वा पर्षत् । ‘सा’ पूर्वोक्ता पर्षत् यं ब्रूते स धर्मः । अध्यात्मज्ञानेषु निपुणतमो वेदधर्मशास्त्रज्ञश्च एकोऽपि वा यं ब्रूते सोऽपि धर्मः ॥ ९ ॥

### MITÂKṢARÂ.

‘Four’ Brâhmanas who know (the duties prescribed by) the Vedas and the Dharma Śâstras form a “Parṣad or a legal assembly.” Those who study three sciences are called tri-vidyâh. Their assembly is called an assembly of persons who know only three sciences (traividya in the original.)

The knowledge of Dharma Śâstra is understood after them also, i.e., the traividya or the assembly of the knowers of the Three Vidyâs, must also know the Dharma Śâstra. It also constitutes a “Parṣad.”

What the above named Parṣad says is Dharma. And what even one person, who is most experienced in the knowledge of Self and who knows the Vedas and the Dharma Śâstra, says is also Dharma.

Here ends the Introduction.

### BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

In order to indicate that none but a Brâhmaṇa has a right to expound the law, the commentator adds the words “Brâhmaṇah” after the word “four.” The word “Dharma” in the text means the Dharma-Śâstra, as it is read along with the word “Veda” (which is also the name of a scripture) : therefore the commentator uses the word “Dharma-Śâstra, &c.”

The three Vidyâs are the Rik, the Yajus and the Sâma Vedas. But the knowers of the three Vedas must also know the Dharma-Śâstra in order to constitute a legal assembly. The force of ‘eva’ or ‘only’ in the text is to exclude the fourth Veda.

In the Kûrma Purâṇa (XXX. v. 2-7) the same idea is also expressed : “A man incurs guilt when he omits to do an ordained act, or does an act which is prohibited. The Prâyaścitta or penance is the purification for it. Let a Brâhmaṇa never remain without Prâyaścitta : let him perform what the learned, tranquil Brâhmaṇas say. What a single Brâhmaṇa who is well versed in the meaning of the Vedas, who is tranquil, who desires



Dharma alone, and who performs the fire-sacrifice, declares (as *prāyaścitta*) that even is the highest law (Dharma). Where the Brāhmaṇas do not keep the sacred fire but are Dharma-desirers and versed in the sense of the Vedas, then what three of such Brāhmaṇas say that is to be known as dharma (and *prayaścitta* may be done accordingly). (Where they are not dharma-desirers but) know many Institutes of Sacred Law, and are dexterous in logical reasoning and argumentation and full discussion of a point, and have studied the Vedas, then *seven* such persons are necessary to declare the law (of *prāyaścitta*). (But where they do not possess the other qualifications) but know the principles of exegetics (*mimāṃsā*) and logic (*nyāya*) and are versed in the Vedānta, then twenty-one such Brāhmaṇas are necessary to declare the law of *prāyaścitta*."

*Note.*—Manu lays down the following rules as regards *Śiṣṭas* and *Paṇḍas* (XII. 108 to 114):—

(108). If it be asked how it should be with respect to (points of) the law which have not been specially mentioned, the (answer is), that which Brāhmaṇas (who are) *Śiṣṭas* propound, shall doubtlessly have legal (force). (109). Those Brāhmaṇas must be considered as *Śiṣṭas* who, in accordance with the sacred law, have studied the Veda together with its appendages, and are able to adduce proofs perceptible by the senses from the revealed texts. (110). Whatever an assembly, consisting either of at least ten, or of at least three persons who follow their prescribed occupations, declares to be law, the legal (force of) that one must not dispute. (111). Three persons who each know one of the three principal Vedas, a Logician, a *Mimāṃsaka*, one who knows the *Nirukta*, one who recites (the institutes of) the sacred law, and three men belonging to the first three orders shall constitute a legal assembly, consisting of at least ten members. (112). One who knows the *Rig-veda*, one who knows the *Yajur-Veda*, and one who knows the *Sāma-Veda* shall be known (to form) an assembly consisting of at least three members (and competent) to decide doubtful points of law. (113). Even that which one Brāhmaṇa versed in the Veda declares to be law must be considered (to have) supreme legal (force, but) not that which is proclaimed by myriads of ignorant men. (114). Even if thousands of Brahmanas, who have not fulfilled their sacred duties, are unacquainted with the Veda, and subsist solely by the name of their caste, meet, they can not (form) an assembly (for settling the sacred law)."

Compare Manu, II. 12 with verse 7:—

"The Veda, the sacred tradition, the customs of virtuous men, and one's own pleasure, they declare to be visibly the four-fold means of defining the sacred law."

## CHAPTER SECOND—BRAHMACHARI OR STUDENTSHIP.

### *The four castes.*

मिताक्षरा ॥ एतैर्नवभिः श्लोकैः सकल शास्त्रोपादघातमुक्त्वा इदानीं वर्णादीनां धर्मान्वक्तुं प्रथमं तावद्वर्णनाह ।

Mitâkṣarâ.—By the above nine verses, having given a general view of the whole Institute, now the author, in (or before) explaining the duties of the various castes, etc., first enumerates all the castes.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 10.

ब्रह्मक्षत्रियविदूशूद्रा वर्णास्त्वाद्यास्त्रयो द्विजाः ।

निषेकाद्याः श्मशानान्तास्तेषां वै मन्त्रतः क्रियाः ॥ १० ॥

ब्रह्म Brahma, The Brâhmaṇa caste. क्षत्रिय Kṣatriya, the Kṣatriya caste. विदू Viṭ, the Vaiśya caste. शूद्राः Sûdrâḥ, the Sudra caste. वर्णाः Varṇâḥ, castes or colors. तु Tu, only. आद्याः Âdyâḥ, the first. त्रयः Trayâḥ, the three. द्विजाः Dvijâḥ, the twice-born. निषेकादि Niṣekâdi, from conception. श्मशानान्ताः Śmaśân-antâḥ, to the funeral. तेषां Teṣâm, their, वै Vai, only, alone. मन्त्रतः Mantrataḥ, with the mantras. क्रिया Kriyâḥ, the ceremonies.

10. The castes are the Brâhmaṇas, the Kṣatriyas, the Vaiśyas and the Sûdrâs. Only the first three (of these) are twice-born, the performance of the ceremonies beginning with the rite of impregnation and ending (with the funeral rites) in the cremation-ground, of these only, is prescribed with sacred formulas.—10.

### मिताक्षरा ॥

ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियवैश्यशूद्राश्चत्वारो वर्णा वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणः । तेषामाद्यास्त्रयो ब्राह्मण-क्षत्रियवैश्या द्विजाः । द्विर्जायन्त इति द्विजाः 'तेषां' द्विजानां 'वै' एव न शद्रस्य । 'निषेकाद्याः' निषेको गर्भाधानमाद्यो यासां तास्तथोक्ताः । 'श्मशानं' पितृवनं तत्संबन्धि कर्म अन्तो यासां ताः क्रियाः मन्त्रैर्भवन्ति ॥ १० ॥

### MITÂKṢARÂ.

The Brâhmaṇas, the Kṣatriyas, the Vaiśyas and the Sûdras are the four castes, whose qualifications will be described later on. "The first three of these," namely, the Brâhmaṇas, the Kṣatriyas and the Vaiśyas are twice-born. "Dvi" means twice and "Jâyante" are born. Hence they are called Dviya or twice-born. "Of these" of the twice-born, vai, "only" alone, that is, not of the Sûdras.

“Beginning with the rite of impregnation, &c.,” those ceremonies to be described later on, among which Garbhādhāna (or the ceremony of impregnation) stands first and the ceremonies performed in Śmaśāna or the cremation ground come at the end ; all these rites are performed with Mantras or sacred formulas.

#### BĀLAMBHATṬA'S GLOSS.

The word upodghāta (general view or preface) is synonymous with udāhāra. The word “tāvad-varṇān” means all castes ; the force of tāvad being to denote “all.” The word tvādyāḥ in the verse is equal to “ādyāḥ tu” meaning “the first (three) only.” The word “Brahma” in the verse means “the Brahmana caste” and so the commentator explains it by the word “Brāhmaṇa.” The words “among these” should be read in the verse to complete the sentence. The word “dvija” is a technical term retaining also its etymological meaning ; namely they are “twice-born” or regenerate : for the investiture with the sacred thread is the second birth. All ceremonies of the three higher castes are performed by reciting sacred formulas : those of the Śūdras are performed in silence without such recitation.

*Yama on Śūdras.*—As says Yama : “The Śūdra also must be similarly sanctified, by the performance of the above rites but without the utterance of the sacred formulas.”

The word “pitṛi vanam” (used by the commentator) means the place where the corpse is placed. The Śmaśāna cannot be the name of a ceremony, so the commentator explains it by saying “the ceremonies appertaining to the cremation ground.” In other words, it means the Saṃskāra with regard to the corpse and the preta or the departed spirit ; consisting of Parāchīṣṭi ceremony.

*A general rule.*—A general rule with regard to these rites is thus laid down :—“In Pūṃsavana, the śimantonnayana, the tonsure, the Upanayana, the godāna, the marriage-bath, and in the marriage ceremonies, the Nāndi Śrāddha should be performed on the day previous. Therefore on the occasion of these impurities, let the Sapiṇḍas assemble or dwell in the same house. Those who are joint in food perform together the same rites and dine together. For ten days after the death of father or mother, those kinsmen who do not perform bathing in cold water, or offering daily piṇḍas, &c., are considered as degraded, unfit to join in sacred (havya) and pious (kavya) works.

Another text says :—“Those sapiṇḍas who are within three degrees, but who do not join in auspicious ceremonies, marriage, &c., and remain dwelling in separate houses, cook separately their food and perform separate Śrāddha rites, &c., are thrown to the big serpents by Soma, the lord of the ancestors.”

Or the word Soma in the above text may mean :—“he who dwells with Umā स-उमा-सोम, i. e., Śiva or Rudra, the Destroyer. Such souls are given over to his snakes by Rudra, the Destroyer.

[The same text then goes on to say] “Or he places it on the lap of Nirriti in front of Yama.”

*The Saṃgraha.*—When owing to some unavoidable reason the sapiṇḍas cannot dine together and dwell under the same roof, then they should observe the following rule laid down in the Saṃgraha :—“If owing to some difficulty it is not possible to dwell together, then they may remain in their own houses, but observe the impurity by cessation of Svadhā rites, &c. If one is incapable of feeding all (through poverty, &c.) then all having prepared their own food (separately) should dine together.”

*The Sacraments.*

मिताक्षरा ॥ इदानीं ताः क्रिया अनुक्रामति ।

MITAKSÂRÂ.

Now the author recounts those sacraments.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 11.

गर्भाधानमृतौ पुंसः सवनं स्पन्दनात्पुरा ।

षष्ठेऽष्टमे वा सीमन्तो मास्येते जातकर्म च ॥ ११ ॥

गर्भाधानं Garbhâdhânam, the conception-rite: literally, garbha=(in the womb, Âdhâna=placing (seed). ऋतौ Rîtau, in the season. पुंसः Pūṁsaḥ, of male. सवनं Savanam, begetting, creating. The ceremony by which a male-child is secured. स्पन्दनात् Spandanât, quickening, moving of the foetus. पुरा Purâ, before. षष्ठे Ṣaṣṭhe, in the sixth. अष्टमे Aṣṭame, in the eighth. वा Vâ, or. सीमन्तः Sîmantah, parting of the hair. मासि Mâsi, in the month. एते Ete, at birth; (आ+ते) when the child is born or comes out of the womb. जातकर्म Jâtakarma, the ceremony of birth. च Cha, and.

11. In season, the Garbhâdhâna ; before the quickening, the Pūṁsavana ; in the sixth or the eighth month, the Sîmanta ; on delivery, the Jâtakarman.—11.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 12.

अहन्येकादशे नाम चतुर्थे मासि निष्क्रमः ।

षष्ठेऽन्नप्राशनं मासि चूडा कार्या यथाकुलम् ॥ १२ ॥

अहनि Ahani, on the day. एकादशे Ekādāśe, eleventh (after birth). नाम Nâma, Nâmakaranam (ceremony) or the rite of naming the child. चतुर्थे Chaturthe, in the fourth. मासि Mâsi, month. निष्क्रमः Niṣkramaḥ, the rite of taking out (the child to see the sun or moon). षष्ठे Ṣaṣṭhe, in the sixth. अन्नप्राशनं Annaprâśanam, the feeding the child with boiled rice. मासि Mâsi, in the month. चूडा Chūḍa, chūḍâkaraṇam, the tonsure. कार्या Kâr्या, to be performed. यथाकुलं Yathâkulam, according to family custom.

12. On the eleventh day, the Nâma-ceremony ; in the fourth month, the Niṣkrama ; in the sixth month, the Annaprâśana ; and the Chūḍâkaraṇa is to be performed according to family usage.—12.

मिताक्षरा ॥

गर्भाधानमित्यनुगतार्थं कर्मनामधेयम्, एवं वक्ष्यमाणान्यपि । तद्गर्भाधानम् 'ऋतौ' ऋतुकाले वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणे । पुंसवनार्थं कर्म गर्भचलनात्पूर्वम् । षष्ठेऽष्टमे वा मासि सीमन्तोन्नयनम् । एते च पुंसवनसीमन्तोन्नयने क्षेत्रसंस्कारकर्मत्वात् सकृदेव कार्ये न प्रतिगर्भम् ।

यथाऽऽह देवलः,

सकृत् सुसंस्कृता नारी सर्वगर्भेषु संस्कृता । इति ।

‘एते’ आ इते आगते गर्भकोशात्कुमारे जाते जातकर्म । एकादशेऽहनि नामकरणं, तच्च पितामहमातामहादिसम्बद्धं कुलदेवतासम्बद्धं वा । यथाऽऽह शङ्खः, “कुलदेवतासम्बद्धं पिता नाम कुर्यात्” इति । चतुर्थे मासि निष्क्रमलक्षणं कर्म सूर्यावेक्षणं कर्म । षष्ठे मास्यन्नप्राशनं कर्म । चूडाकरणं तु यथाकुलम् । कार्यमिति प्रत्येकं सम्बध्यते ॥ ११ ॥ ॥ १२ ॥

### MITÂKṢARĀ.

*The Garbhâdhâna.*—The “Garbhâdhâna” is the appellation of a ceremony expressed by the meaning of the word itself (Garbha=embryo, Âdhâna=placing or the ceremony of impregnation) and so also the other rites to be described later on. That Garbhâdhâna should be in “season” i.e., the time or season to be described hereafter.

*The Pûmsavana.*—The ceremony called “Pûmsavana” (must be performed) before the foetus begins to move.

*The Sîmantonnayana.*—The “Simanta” ceremony (or parting the hair is to be performed) in the sixth or eighth month.

The latter two ceremonies, the Pûmsavana and the Sîmantonnayana, being rites for the consecration of the field (womb) are to be performed only once, and not at each pregnancy; as it has been said by Devala:—“A woman once properly consecrated is to be deemed consecrated for all subsequent conceptions.”

*The Jâtakarma.*—एते “Ete” means ‘delivery’ and is equal to आ+इते which means ‘coming out or being born.’ Coming out of the child from the uterus.

On the child coming out of the womb, the ceremony of Jâtakarma or birth rite is to be performed.

*The Nâma-karaṇa.*—On the eleventh day of birth, the ceremony of naming (takes place). That name must be indicative of paternal or maternal grandfather and the rest, or denote the family deity. As it has been said by Śaṅkha:—“The father should select the name denoting the family deity.”

*The Niṣkrama.*—In the fourth month the ceremony of Niṣkrama, i.e., the ceremony of showing the child to the sun, should be performed.

*The Annaprâśana.*—In the sixth month the ceremony of Anna-prâśana or feeding the child with boiled rice.

*The Chuḍâkaraṇa.*—The ceremony of Chuḍâkaraṇa (or the first shaving of the head) should be done according to family custom.

The phrase "is to be performed" should be joined to each of the above sentences.

### BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

#### *The Pumsavana and Simantonnayana.*

The names of the various ceremonies mentioned above, denote etymologically the nature of those ceremonies. They are what is technically known as Yoga-*raḍhi* words. In the verse, the name Pumsavana is broken up from metrical exigencies, into its constituent parts Pumsaḥ Savanam "begetting a male." The word *spandanât* is explained by the commentator by the word 'chalanât,' 'moving.' The word 'Simanta' in the verse is the abbreviated form of the full name Simantonnayana.

*Pâraskara*.—The Simantonnayanah and Pumsavana are to be performed once only, as is declared by Pâraskara :—"Now the Simantonnayana (or the parting of the pregnant wife's hair). It is performed like the Pumsavana, in her first pregnancy" (I. 15-2). The sense is that it is a ceremony for the purification of the field.

The authority of Devala, cited by the commentator, applies however to all the *three* ceremonies including the Garbhâdhâna.

*A pûrvapakṣa*.—Says an opponent :—"In the case of Simanta rite, it is reasonable that it should be performed only once; but why should not the Pumsavana be repeated at every conception, for a man may desire more than one son?" In fact, the texts of Hârîta quoted in Hemâdri :—"The wives of the twice-born, if sanctified once by Simanta, are considered as sanctified for all future conceptions" and Viṣṇu "If a wife, without Simanta sanctification gives birth to a child she must be sanctified after delivery" show that the statement of performing once only applies to Simanta only and does not refer to Pumsavana. This is also the opinion of Sudarśanâcharya. This rule cannot be applied to Pumsavana for Bahvricha kârikâ says :—"The rule is that the ceremonies should be repeated in every pregnancy."

*Reply*.—The begetting of a son is necessary in order to free one's self from the ancestral debt. One son is only necessary : and so the rite of Pumsavana, by which a male child may be secured, is absolutely necessary only in the first conception. In subsequent conceptions, it may be performed, whenever a male child is desired, but not otherwise. But he who desires only a female child, need not perform it even once. Such is the sense of the Sûtra quoted by the opponent. The same is the meaning of Sudarśanâchârya.

*Viṣṇu quoted*.—The text of Viṣṇu :—"The Simanta is for the sanctifying of the female, some say it is for the consecration of the womb and so must be performed at every pregnancy." This is in apparent conflict, but not really so. The phrase "some say" shows that it is not an authoritative opinion.

*Āśvalâya*.—So also the text of Āśvalâya Smṛiti :—"The Bali offering and Simanta rite should be performed in each pregnancy." The Bali here refers to Viṣṇu-Bali, which should be done in the eighth month of conception. Nowadays this Bali offering has fallen into disuse. This may be performed in the third, fourth, fifth, or sixth month also or along with Simanta.

*Āpastamba G. S.*—The Āpastamba Grihya lays down the following rule about Pumsavana :—"When the pregnant condition becomes visible the Pumsavana should be performed, when the moon is in Tisya asterism." "The Simantonnayana in her first pregnancy in the fourth month (Ap. 14. 9). So also Kârṣṇâjini :—"The Simantonnayana should be performed during any time between the first quickening of the embryo till delivery : so says Śankha."

*Performance of many rites simultaneously.*—The pregnant condition becomes visible in the third or fourth month, for such is declared in the Bahvrichas and other Smritis. If, therefore, the Pūṃsavana is done in the fourth month, then the Sīmanta should be performed immediately before it, and then the Pūṃsavana; without losing the auspicious time. If both ceremonies are performed together, the Nāndi Śraddha, &c., need be performed only once (and not repeated for each ceremony), for the time, place and agent are the same.

*Chhandoga Pariśiṣṭa.*—As in Chhandoga Pariśiṣṭa :—“Where many ceremonies are performed together, then in the first of these only the Mātri Pūja is done, and not in the others, and so also the Śraddha is performed in the first only and not repeated in each separately.”

*Vopadeva.*—According to Vopadeva this rule applies only where the saṃskāras of several children take place together. According to others, it applies to the performance of several saṃskāras together, when they were not performed in due time.

*Smṛiti-artha-Sāra.*—This is the opinion of the author of the Smṛiti-artha-Sāra also.

#### THE CEREMONY FOR SECURING PAINLESS DELIVERY.

*Āpastamba G. S.*—In the Āpastamba Gṛhya Sūtra the Pūṃsavana is the name of another ceremony also by which the child is quickly born, and the mother does not suffer the travails of child-birth for any length of time. It is a ceremony to shorten the period of travail and is called Kṣipra Pūṃsavana :—“With a shallow cup that has not been used before, he draws water in the direction of the river's current; at his wife's feet he lays down a Tūryantī plant; he should then touch his wife, who is soon to be delivered, on the head with text Yajus (II. 11-14) and should sprinkle her with the water, with the next three verses (II. 11-15-17).

*The Anvālovana.*—The Anvālovana (the ceremony for preventing disturbances which could endanger the embryo) is necessary for those who follow Āśvalāyana, and not for the Taittiriya. (See Āś. Gri., I. 13-1).

*Śaṅkha.*—The second Sīmanta may be performed in the seventh and eighth months of pregnancy also. The second may be performed even up to delivery: as says Śaṅkha : “So long as there is not delivery.”

*Satyavrata.*—And also Satyavrata :—“If a woman delivers of a child, without Sīmanta being performed, the child should be placed in a basket, and the ceremony performed on the mother then and there.”

These two (Sīmanta and Pūṃsavana) must be performed at the fixed time ordained for them, even though such time be otherwise inauspicious owing to Astādi (conjunction of a planet with the sun, &c). If, however, it can be avoided, it is better.

#### THE RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THE PREGNANT WOMAN.

[After describing so far, Bālabhaṭṭa enters into a digression and lays down certain rules to be observed by pregnant women and their husbands].

*Kaśyapa.*—Says Kaśyapa as quoted in Pārijāta :—“A pregnant woman should avoid riding on elephants and horses, mountaineering or going up high staircase as well as violent exercises, quick movements (or running), and driving in carriages. She should avoid grief, blood-letting, agitation and worry, cock-posture, much work, sleeping by day, or keeping awake at night. So also crossing rivers (by boats or swimming) and driving in a carriage. After Pūṃsavana she must avoid pungent and strong drugs, alkalis, coition and raising or carrying heavy loads.”

*Daurhrida.*—The husband should supply the wife during this period all that she takes a fancy to. If the fancy (daurhrida) is not supplied, there is danger to the child in the womb; it may become ugly, or die.

After the fifth month of pregnancy she should perform no sacred rites, daiva or pitrya, nor cook food for ancestral oblations or the Five Daily Sacrifices.

*Samvarta*.—In *Samvarta* :—"The pregnant woman should not eat in the evening twilight, nor should go or bathe on the roots of trees. Nor should sit on upaskara or rubbish heap, nor on pestle or mortar, nor bathe in deep water, nor frequent empty rooms, nor remain near an ant-hill, nor should be fluttered in mind, nor make lines on the earth with nails, nor with charcoal or ash. Nor should she be addicted to much sleep and should avoid gymnastics: nor go where there is an ash-heap, or bones or skulls. She should avoid quarrel, and yawning and stretching of body. Her hair should not be flowing, nor should she remain polluted. She should not sleep with head towards north nor towards south: nor should she be lightly dressed, nor agitated nor with wet feet. She should not utter inauspicious words nor laugh much. She must always serve the elders and seek their good will. She should bathe in water in which are immersed health-giving herbs and woods. She should be without jealousy, and eager in the worship of the deity of the Home. She should be always cheerful, intent on the good of her husband, she should give alms, and observe the third night sacred to Pârvatî. A woman should always be peaceful, specially the pregnant woman. The son of such a woman would have good behaviour, long life, and intelligence, otherwise there is danger of abortion."

#### THE RULES TO BE OBSERVED BY THE HUSBAND OF THE PREGNANT WOMAN.

*Gâlava*.—*Gâlava* says :—"The husband should avoid burning, sowing, total shaving, mountaineering, and boating."

*The Samgraha*.—In the *Samgraha* :—"He should avoid carrying a corpse, bathing in the sea, sowing, offering pinḍas, and going on foreign travel."

*Āśvalāyana*.—*Āśvalāyana* also says :—"Sowing and coition, pilgrimage, and eating at Śrāddhas after the seventh month, should be avoided by the husband of the pregnant woman." After the third month of pregnancy the husband should allow his hair to grow and not cut them. He should stop shaving except on ceremonial occasions.

After marriage one should not cut his hair for a full year, for six months after Mounjî, and for three months after Chuḍākāraṇa: nor when one's wife is pregnant."

*Astrology*.—The rules laid down in books of astrology are similar :—"When the pregnancy becomes manifest, the husband should avoid sea, carriage, carrying of a corpse, shaving, going to pilgrimages like Gayâ, &c., or public sacrifices, or household sacrifices."

#### THE JĀTAKARMA OR THE BIRTH RITE.

*Pârījāta*.—"As soon as the father hears that a son is born to him, he must bathe with the dress he is in."

(*Pârījāta*) *Vasiṣṭha*.—"Before the navel string is cut the birth-rite must be performed" (*Vasiṣṭha*.)

*Samvarta*.—So also *Samvarta* :—"After the birth, the birth-rite must be performed duly. If by chance the proper time passed away, without the rite being performed, then it should be done when the days of birth impurity come to an end."

*Viṣṇu Dharma*.—In the *Viṣṇu Dharma* also we find :—"When the son is born the Śrāddha must be performed before the navel string is cut."

*Samvarta*.—This Śrāddha is to be done with gold alone, as says *Samvarta* :—"When a son is born, the wise father desiring auspicious things should perform the Śrāddha with gold alone, not with the cooked food nor with meat food." This should be done even if there is death impurity.



*Prajāpati*.—As says Prajāpati quoted by Hemādri :—"If a son is born in the period of impurity, the father becomes pure temporarily (in order to perform the birth-rite Śrāddha) and he is purified from the prior impurity."

*Brihaspati*.—If the above time is passed away without performing the Śrāddha, then Brihaspati lays down the following rule :—"If the proper time is over, then the person, who knows the law, should carefully find out another time consulting the Nakṣatra (asterism), Tithi (lunar day) and Lagna (the rising constellation)."

*Viṣṇu Dharmottara*.—This Śrāddha must be performed "whether it is night or twilight or eclipse or there is some other birth impurity" (by the previous birth of another son of his own or of his kinsmen.) In the case of death impurity, this Śrāddha is to be performed in that period or after the expiry of that period ; as we find in the Viṣṇu Dharmottara :—"or this may be performed by the self-regulated ones on the expiry of the period of Aśauca."

*The Gotraja may perform it, in the father's absence*.—If the father be residing in a foreign country, then any gotraja kinsman of the child, such as uncles, etc., in the order of their seniority, should perform this ceremony.

This is the rule with regard to the rite of naming the child also. But though the time for it is also fixed, yet it must not be performed on days when there is Viṣṭi Yoga, Vaidhṛiti Yoga, or Vyatīpāda Yoga, eclipse, Samkrānti and Śrāddha. But there is no prohibition as regards Astādi (inauspicious time) because the time for this ceremony is fixed. But if the proper time is passed, then the Astādi prohibition should also apply, as will be mentioned further on.

*Mental Sandhyā*.—Before performing this ceremony he should do mental Sandhyā, without Prāṇāyama ; up to the offering of Arghyaḥ ; reciting fully the Gāyatrī he should give the Arghyaḥ to the sun.

### ADOPTION.

Baudhāyana lays down the following rule of adoption :—

**पुत्रपरिग्रहविधिं व्याख्यास्यामः। शोणितशुक्रसम्भवः मातापितृनिमित्तकः तस्य प्रदानपरित्यागविक्रयेषु मातापितरौ प्रभवतः ॥ १ ॥**

*पुत्रपरिग्रहविधिं* Putra parigraha vidhim, the rule for the adoption of a son. *व्याख्यास्यामः* Vyākhyāsyāmaḥ, we shall explain. *शोणित-शुक्र-सम्भवः* Śonita-śukra-sambhavaḥ, blood-seed-born, formed of virile seed and uterine blood. *माता-पितृ-निमित्तकः* Mātā-pitṛi-nimittakaḥ, mother-father-as-cause. Man proceeds from his mother and father, as an effect from its cause. *तस्य* Tasya, of him. *प्रदान-परित्याग-विक्रयेषु* Pradāna-aparityāga-vikrayeṣu, in giving, abandoning and selling. *माता पितरौ* Mātā pitarau, the mother and the father. *प्रभवतः* Prabhavataḥ, have power.

1. We shall explain the rule for the adoption of a son. Man, formed of virile seed and uterine blood, proceeds from his mother and father (as an effect) from its cause. (Therefore) the father and mother have power to give, to abandon or to sell their (son).

**नत्वं पुत्रं दद्यात् प्रतिगृहीयाद्वा सहि सन्तानाय पूर्वेषाम् ॥ २ ॥**

*न* Na, not. *तु* Tu, but. *एकं* Ekam, one, only. *पुत्रं* Puttram, the son. *दद्यात्* Dadyāt, let give. *प्रतिगृहीयात्* Pratigṛīhiyāt, let receive. *वा* Vā, nor. *सः* Saḥ, he.

हि Hi, because. सन्तानाय Santānāya, for the continuance. पूर्वेषां Pūrveṣām, of the ancestors.

2. But let him not give nor receive (in adoption) an only son. For he (must remain) to continue the line of the ancestors.

न तु स्त्री पुत्रं दद्यात् प्रतिगृहीयाद्वा अन्यत्रानुज्ञानाद्भर्तुः ॥३॥

न Na, not. तु Tu, but. स्त्री Strī, a woman. पुत्रं Puttram, son. दद्यात् Dadyāt, let give. प्रतिगृहीयात् Pratigrihiyāt, let receive. वा Vā, or. अन्यत्र Anyatra, except. अनुज्ञानात् Anujñānāt, with the permission. भर्तुः Bhartuḥ, of the husband.

3. Let a woman neither give nor receive a son except with the permission of her husband.

प्रतिग्रहीष्यन्नुपकल्पयते द्वे वाससी द्वे कुण्डले अंगुलीयकंचाचार्यं च वेदपारगं कुशमयं बर्हिः पर्णमयमिध्ममिति ॥ ४ ॥

प्रतिग्रहीष्यन् Pratigrahiṣyan, who is desirous of adopting (a son). उपकल्पयते Upakalpayate, procures. द्वे Dve, two. वाससी Vāsasī, garments. द्वे Dve, two. कुण्डले Kuṇḍale, ear-rings. अंगुलीयकं Aṅguliyakam, finger ring. च Cha, and. आचार्यं Āchāryam, spiritual guide. च Cha, and. वेदपारगं Vedapāragam, who has studied the whole Veda. कुशमयं बर्हिः Kuśamayam varhi, layer of kuśa grass. पर्णमयं Paṇamayam, made of leaves. इध्मम् Idhmam, fuel. इति Iti, thus.

4. He who is desirous of adopting (a son) procures two garments, two ear-rings, and a finger-ring, a spiritual guide who has studied the whole Veda, a layer of kuśa grass and fuel of palāśa wood and so forth.

अथ बन्धूनाह्वय (निवेशन) मध्ये राजनि चावेद्य परिषदि वागारमध्ये ब्राह्मणानन्नेन परिविष्य पुण्याहं स्वस्ति ऋद्धिमिति वाचयित्वा अथ देवयजनेल्लेखनप्रभृत्याप्रणीताभ्यः दातुः समक्षं गत्वा पुत्रं मे देहीति भिक्षेत ॥ ५ ॥

अथ Atha, then. बन्धून् Vandhūn, relations. आह्वय Āhūya, having called. निवेशन मध्ये Niveśana madhye, in their presence. राजनि Rājani, to the king. च Cha, and. आवेद्य Āvedya, having informed. परिषदि Pariṣadi, in the assembly. वा Vā, or. वागारमध्ये Āgāramadhye, in the dwelling place. ब्राह्मणान् Brāhmaṇān, Brāhman. अन्नेन Annena, with food. परिविष्य Pariviṣya, placing before them. पुण्याहं Puṇyāham, an auspicious day. स्वस्ति Svasti. hail. ऋद्धि Riddhim, prosperity. इति Iti, this. वाचयित्वा Vāchayitvā, having made them utter. अथ Atha, now. देवयजनेल्लेखनप्रभृत्याप्रणीताभ्यः Devāyajanollekhana prabhṛityaprapñitābhyah from that place, where the gods are worshipped, and which begin with the drawing of the lines on the altar and end with the placing of the water vessels. दातुः Dātuḥ, of the giver. समक्षं Samakṣam, in the front. गत्वा Gātvā, having gone. पुत्रं Puttram, son. मे Me, to me. देहि Dehi, give. इति Iti, thus. भिक्षेत Bhikṣeta, should request.

5. Then he convenes his relations, informs the king (of his intentions to adopt) in their presence, feeds the (invited) Brāhman in the

assembly or in his dwelling, and makes them wish him "an auspicious day, hail, and prosperity." Then he performs the ceremonies which begin with the drawing of the lines from the altar (up to the end, from that place, where the devas are worshipped) and which end with the placing of the water vessels, goes to the giver (of the child) and should address (this) request (to him) "give me thy son."—6.

**ददामीतीतर आह ॥ तं परिगृह्णाति धर्माय त्वा परिगृह्णामि सन्तत्यै त्वा गृह्णामि इति ॥ ६ ॥**

(6) ददामि Dadāmi, I give. इति Iti, this. इतरः Itaraḥ, other. आह Āha, answers.

ते Tam, him. परिगृह्णाति Parigrihṇāti, receives. धर्माय Dharmāya, for the fulfilment of my religious duties. त्वा Tvā, thee. परिगृह्णामि Parigrihṇāmi, I take. सन्तत्यै Santatyai, to continue the line. त्वा Tvā, thee. गृह्णामि Grihṇāmi, I take. इति Iti, thus.

(6). The other answers "I give" (him).

He receives (the child with these words) "I take thee for the fulfilment of (my) religious duties; I take thee to continue the line (of my ancestors)."

**अथैनं वस्त्रकुण्डलाभ्यामंगुलीयकेन चालंकृत्य परिधानप्रभृत्याग्निमुखात् कृत्वा (पक्वान्नं) पक्वान्जुहोति ॥ ७ ॥**

अथ Atha, then. वस्त्रकुण्डलाभ्यां Vastrakuṇḍalābhyāṃ, with garments and ear-rings. अंगुलीयकेन Aṅguliyakena, with finger ring. च Cha, and. अलंकृत्य Alāṅkritya, having adorned. परिधानप्रभृत्या Paridhāna prabhṛitya, beginning with the rite of Paridhāna, viz., placing of the pieces of woods called the Paridhis. अग्निमुखात् कृत्वा Agnimukhāt Kṛtvā, ending the with ceremony called Agnimukha. पक्वान् Pakvān, cooked (food). जुहोति Juhoti, offers.

7. Then he adorns him with the (above-mentioned) two garments, the two ear-rings, and the finger ring, performs the rites which begin with the placing of the (pieces of wood called) Paridhis (fences round the altar) and end with the Agnimukha and offer (a portion) of the cooked (food) in the fire.

**"यस्त्वा हृदा कीरिणा मन्यमानः" (५-४-१० ऋग्वेदे) इति पुरोऽनुवाक्यामनूच्य (रिविक्ता) "यस्मै त्वं सुकृते जातवेद" (५-४-११ ऋग्वेदे) इति याज्यया जुहोति ॥ ८ ॥**

यः Yaḥ, who. त्वा Tvā, thee. हृदा Hṛidā, with (grateful) heart. कीरिणा Kīriṇā, with praises. मन्यमानः Manyamānaḥ, remembering. (Rig-Veda, 5. 4. 10.) इति Iti, this. पुरोऽनुवाक्यां Puroṇuvākyaṃ, the verse Puroṇuvākyaṃ. अनूच्य Anūchya, having recited. यस्मै Yasmai, to which. त्वं Tvam, thou. सुकृते Sukṛite, of good deeds. जातवेदः Jātavedaḥ, O Jātavedas (Rig-Veda, 5. 4. 11) इति Iti, this. याज्यया Yājyayā, with the Yājya (verse.) जुहोति Juhoti, offers an oblation.

8. Having recited the Puroṇuvâkyâ (verse) "As I remembering thee with grateful spirit," &c., (Rv. V. 4. 10) he offers an oblation, reciting the Yâjya (verse) "The pious man, O Jâtavedas," &c. (Rv. V. 4. 11).

*Note.*—As I, remembering thee with grateful spirit, a mortal call with might on the immortal, vouchsafe us high renown, O Jâtavedas, and may I be immortal by my children. (Rv. V. 4. 10.)

The pious man, O Jâtavedas Agni, to whom thou grantest ample room and pleasure, gaineth abundant wealth with sons and horses, and with kine for his well being.—  
(Rv. V. 4. 11.)

**अथ व्याहृतीहुत्वा स्विष्टकृतप्रभृति सिद्धमाधेनुवरप्रदानादक्षिणां ददाति ॥ ९ ॥**

अथ Atha, then. व्याहृतीः Vyâhṛtiḥ. Vyâhṛiti (verse) हुत्वा Hutvâ, having offered. स्विष्टकृतप्रभृति Svistakṛitprabhṛiti, which begin with the oblation to Agni Svistakṛit. सिद्धं Siddham, known. आधेनुवरप्रदानात् Â-dhenuvarapradânât, end with the presentation of a cow. दक्षिणाम् Dakṣiṇām, as a fee. ददाति Dadāti, gives.

9. Then he offers (oblations reciting) the Vyâhṛitis :—(the ceremonies) which begin with the oblation to Agni Svistakṛit and end with the presentation of a cow, as a fee (to the officiating priest are) known.

**एते एव वाससी एते एव कुण्डले एतच्चांगुलीयकम् ॥ १० ॥**

एते Ete, these two. एव Eva, also. वाससी Vāsasī, two garments. एते Ete, these two. एव Eva, also. कुण्डले Kuṇḍale, ear-rings (two) एतत् Etat, this. च्च Cha, and. आंगुलीयकम्, finger ring.

10. And presents (to the spiritual guide) as a sacrificial fee those two dresses, those two ear-rings, and that finger-ring (with which he had addressed the child.)

**यद्येवं कृत्वौरसः पुत्र उत्पद्यते तुरीयभागेष भवतीतिह स्माह बौधायनः ॥ ११ ॥**

यदि Yadi, if. एवं कृत्वा Evamkr̥tvâ, after the performance of these (rites). औरसः Aurasaḥ, legitimate. पुत्रः puttraḥ, son. उत्पद्यते utpadyate, is born. तुरीयभाक् turīyavāk, receiver of the fourth share. एषः Eṣaḥ, the adopted son. भवति Bhavati, is. इति Iti, this. ह Ha, verily. स्माह Smāha, says. (बौधायनः) (Baudhāyanaḥ), so-named R̥ṣi.

11. If after the performance of these (rites) a legitimate son of his own body is born (to the adopter, then the adopted son) receives a fourth (of the legitimate son's) share.

Thus says Baudhāyana.

## THE PUJĀ OF THE GODDESS ṢAṢṬHĪ.

Says Nārada :—

Nārada.—The sixth night should be specially guarded. Vigil should be kept in the night ; and offering should be given to the ancestors. Men should keep awake the whole night armed, and women in dancing and singing : and so also on the tenth night of birth.

## THE RITUAL.

Perform Saṅkalpa with the following Mantra :—

Saṅkalpa.—To-day (in the year so and so, &c....) I shall worship with these humble offerings, Gaṇapati, Dūrgā, Iṣṭa-devatā, (the tutelary deity), Kula-devatā (the family deity), Grāma-devatā (the village deity), the Sixteen Mothers, Gauṛī and the rest, the Six Kṛittikās, Kārtikeya (the God of War), the Weapon, Viṣṇu, and Mahā Ṣaṣṭhī, &c., desiring to obtain all kinds of prosperity, and in order to please the Supreme Īvara, and by the removal of calamities, to pray for the attainment of long life and health for the new born baby, for its mother, and for myself. For the successful performance of all ceremonies I shall worship first Gaṇapati also.

Gaṇapati Pūjā.—Having recited this Saṅkalpa, let him worship Gaṇapati with Pādya (water for washing the feet), Arghya, Āchamanīya, &c.

Then let him pray to Gaṇapati with the following Mantra :—

“Om ! O Deva, destroyer of all obstacles ! One-tusked, elephant-faced, thou art worshipped with devotion and love. Make this infant attain long life. O big-bellied ! O Great One ! O Destroyer of all misfortunes, may the child live long through thy Grace.”

*The dispersion of goblins.*—Having thus prayed to Gaṇapati, let him scatter mustard seeds all round, reciting :—“Fly away, ye evil spirits and goblins that dwell in earth ; may all the evil spirits that throw obstacles, be destroyed through the command of Śiva.”

Ghaṭa-sthāpana.—Then let him place a jar full of water and recite on it the Mantra :—“May Heaven and Earth, the Mighty pair, bedew for us our sacrifice, and feed us full with nourishments.”—(Rig Veda, I. 22. 13). Then let him worship Varuṇa on this jar. Then place on this jar the metal image of the goddess taken from the furnace. Then let him worship, after invocation, Gaṇapati, Dūrgā and the rest on the small heaps of rice or on betel-nuts. The first of these is the pūjā of Gaṇapati.

Dūrgā Pūjā.—The next is the Pūjā of Dūrgā with Jayantī mantra, namely :—

“Jayantī, Maṅgalā, Kālī, Bhadrakālī, Kapālinī, Dūrgā, Kṣamā, Śivā, Dhātṛī, Svāhā, Svadhā, namas tute.” “Salutation to Thee, O All-conquering, O Auspicious one ! O Time ! O Fortunate Time ! O Destiny ! O Difficulty-remover ! O Forgiving One ! O Good ! O Supporter ! O Svāhā ! O Svadhā !”

Then having worshipped the Iṣṭa-devatā, the Kula-devatā, the Grāma-devatā, along with their respective vehicles, he should invoke the Sixteen Mothers and worship them. Then he should offer the following prayer :—“O Mothers of all creatures ! O Sources of all prosperity ! Being worshipped by me with faith, protect ye my child.”

Six Kṛittikās and Eight Siddhis.—Then the Six Kṛittikās should be worshipped. The Six Kṛittikās are named Śivā, Sambhūtī, Prīti, Sannati, Anasūyā, and Kṣamā. The Eight Siddhis (Occult Powers) are Apimā (becoming small like an atom), Mahimā (becoming big), Garimā (becoming heavy), Laghimā (becoming light), Prāpti (power of attaining), Prākāmya, Īṣitva (lordliness), Vaṣṭitva (subjugating the will of another).

Brahmā, Śiva and Nārāyaṇa.—These should be worshipped—Brahmā and his spouse Sarasvatī, Śaṅkara and his spouse Bhavānī, and Nārāyaṇa and his spouse Lakṣmī. In the same way the Loka-pālas (the Guardian angels of the planets) should be worshipped.

*The Mantras.*—The pūjā mantras are, as for Śivā, Śivāyai namaḥ, for Sambhuti, Sambhutyai namaḥ, &c. Each should be invoked and worshipped as above.

*Kārtikeya Pūjā.*—Then invoking Kārtikeya, worship him: and afterwards offer the following prayer:—

“Om! O Kārtikeya! Mighty-armed! O Heart's-delight of Gaurī! O Deva! protect my son. Salutation to thee, O Kārtikeya!”

*The Sword Pūjā.*—Then let him worship the Sword, after proper invocation. Then pray:—

“The Sword, the Punisher, the Scimitar, the Sharp-edged, the Difficult-of-attainment, the Womb-of-Fortune, the Victory, and the Upholder-of-law. Salutation to thee. These are thy eight names, O Sword! given to thee by the Creator himself. Thy asterism is Kṛittikā, thy Guru is Lord Mahādeva, thy body is golden (or Rohiṇya), thy protector is Lord Janārdana. Thou art my father and grandfather. Protect thou me always. Thou art refulgent like a blue cloud, sharp-teethed and small-bellied (tīkṣṇa-danṣṭra, kṛiśo-dara). [Thou art pure of heart, without anger and full of great energy.] Through thy help the earth is maintained, through thee, the Demon Buffalo was killed, therefore salutation to thee, O Sword! O sharp-edged! Pure-steel!” (Durgotsava Ritual in Bṛihat Nandikeśvara Purāṇa.)

“Salutation to Thee! O Nārāyaṇi! O Killer of Muṇḍa! O Chāmuṇḍa! O Goddess of Destiny! O Prosperity! O destroyer of all evils!”

- This mode of pūjā is to be understood everywhere else also.

*The Bamboo Pūjā.*—Then let him worship bamboo (vaṁśa.) [There is a pun on this word; here it means “bamboo” primarily, and dynasty or family-tree secondarily.]

“O auspicious One! Giver of all auspicious things! O the ever-beloved of Govinda! O Vaṁśa (bamboo)! increase my vaṁśa (dynasty). Salutation to thee, O Ever-merry!”

[Lute made of bamboo is the constant companion of Kṛiṣṇa.]

*The mace.*—Then give pūjā to musala (the mace). And salute reciting:—“O mace, grant to my son all that excellent strength which is possessed by Viṣṇu of the Unbounded energy.”

*The conch shell.*—Then conch must be worshipped and saluted thus:—“Thou art the holiest of all holy things: the most auspicious of all auspicious things. Thou art held by Viṣṇu. Vouchsafe peace to me. O conch, thou art white. Thou art destroyer of mortal sins.”

*The churning stick.*—Then the churning stick should be worshipped and saluted thus:—“O churning stick, thou art Mandāra Mountain, by thee the ocean was churned. Churn away all evils from this my son—salutations to thee.”

*Viṣṇu Pūjā.*—Then do pūjā to Viṣṇu and salute with the following:—“Adored of the three worlds, Lord of Śrī! O giver of victory! Grant peace, O wielder of the mace! O Nārāyaṇa! all hail to Thee! Let there be peace, let there be auspiciousness, let there be good of the child. Let the Lord Janārdana himself protect this infant.”

*The plough.*—Let him then worship the plough, and salute it:—“O thou plough-share! O Great One! O destroyer of all evils! O Rohineya! protect always my child. Salutation to thee.” [This verse may also be translated as applying to Balarāma, the wielder of the plough.]

## THEN HE SHOULD WORSHIP ŚAṢṬHĪ.

*Prāṇāyāma and Nyāsa.*—Perform Prāṇāyāma with Om : and Nyāsa of the fingers and limbs with the syllable śā, śi &c : as Om śāṃ aṅguṣṭhābhyām namaḥ ; (salutation to the two thumbs) ; Om śiṃ tarjanībhyām namaḥ (index finger) ; Om śuṃ madhyamābhyām namaḥ (middle fingers) ; Om ṣaiṃ anāmikābhyām namaḥ (ring-fingers) ; Om ṣauṃ kanīṣṭhikābhyām namaḥ (little fingers), Om śaḥ karatāla karapṛiṣṭhābhyām namaḥ (palm and back of the hands). Then perform nyāsa of the limbs :—Om śāṃ hṛidayāya namaḥ (heart) ; Om śiṃ śīrase svāhā (Om svāhā to head) ; O śuṃ śikhāyai vaṣaṭ (vaṣaṭ to tuft knot) ; Om ṣaiṃ kavachāya hūṃ (Hūṃ to the arms) ; Om ṣauṃ netratrāya Vauṣaṭ (to the three eyes) ; Om śaḥ astrāya Phaṭ (Phaṭ to the hands).

*Dhyāna.*—Then let him meditate and make the image of the goddess thus :—“The goddess is seated on a full-blown lotus, in a semi-lotus posture (one foot crossed and the other pendant?), adorned with all ornaments, having full-developed breasts, always raining nectar, dressed in yellow silk, having four arms, in the right upper hand holding a thick sceptre, and in the left upper hand holding an auspicious blue lotus, while holding various weapons in the other right and left arms.” Having thus meditated on her, performing Prāṇāyāma, (imagine that you) bring her out (of your heart) through the right nostril and place it on the metal image mentioned before, in the eight-petalled lotus, and invoke her with the following mantra :—“ Come O boon-giving goddess ! O famed as great Śaṣṭhī ! protect my son with all thy powers, Hail to thee O Mahā Śaṣṭhī.”

*Āvāhana.*—Then saying “O great Śaṣṭhī, come here and stay here,” offer puṇā to her. O Jannadā ! Hail, O Giver of birth ! I invoke the Birth-giver goddess. Hail, O Jivantikā, O Living One ! I invoke the life-giver. “Be this our praise, O Varuṇa and Mitra ; may this be health and force to us. O Agni may we obtain firm ground and room for resting ; Glory to heaven, the lofty habitation.” (Rig Veda, V. 47. 7). The puṇa mantra is “Yām janāḥ pratinandanti, &c.—(Pārāskara Gṛihya Sūtra, III. 2. 2.)

*Mantra.*—The night whom men welcome like a cow that comes to them, that night which is the consort of the year, may that night be auspicious to us. Svāhā ! The night which is the image of the year, that we worship. May I reach old age imparting strength to my offspring. Svāhā ! To the Samvatsara, to the Parivatsara, to the Iṇāvatsara, to the Idvatsara, to the Vatsara bring ye great adoration, may we undecayed, unbeaten, long enjoy the favour of these years which are worthy of sacrifices. Svāhā ! May summer, winter and spring, the rains be friendly and may autumn be free of danger to us. In the safe protection of these seasons may we dwell, and may they last to us through a hundred years. Svāhā.

Glory to thee, O Goddess, O Mother of the universe, O Giver of delight to the universe ! Be gracious, O auspicious goddess ! Hail to thee, O Goddess Śaṣṭhī ! O Goddess Śaṣṭhī ! O powerful One ! O Giver of Son to all ! O Giver of Boons ! May my child live long through thy grace.”

*Naivedya.*—Having thus worshipped, let him offer Naivedya (cooked food) with the mantra :—“Deign to accept this food (Naivedya) consisting of cooked sweet rice, milk porridge (pāyasa), cake (polikā), and piṣṭha golika cake.” Then offer fruits :—“I present these many excellent delightful fruits, may they give satisfaction to Śaṣṭhī. Through fruit, everything become successful (fruitful) and all desires are accomplished (fructify).” Then salute with the following mantra :—“O thou lover of thy devotees, and of men and sages and angels, protect this my son ! O Mahā Śaṣṭhī hail to thee.”

*Prayer to Śaṣṭhī.*—Then offer the child to the goddess, reciting :—“As thou didst protect the infant Skanda, the son of Gaurī, so protect this child of mine. Glory to thee, O

Śaṣṭhikâ. Glory to thee, O goddess Śaṣṭhi, lady of the confinement room! Thou hast been worshipped with great devotion, protect the child along with its mother. Controller of all beings, increaser of all prosperity, instructor of all learnings, O mother! we bow to Thee. Thou procreator of all worlds, especially of all children, protect always my son in thy Nârâyāṇī form. O Destroyer of Obstacles! O Mahâ Śaṣṭhi! protect this baby always. Protect the child along with the mother, always residing in this family. O Mother! thou doest always good to all creatures! Thou art the benefactress of the whole world as Śaṣṭhî protect thou always my son. O Śaṣṭhikâ! O Illustrious! O Giver of good and bad boons! May my child live long through Thy grace, free from all dangers. In this lying in chamber, surrounded by all shining ones, protect O Glorious one! O Destroyer of all misfortunes! I have brought this child, born in my family, to thy feet, craving thy protection, may the child live long. All hail to Thee, O Mahâ Śaṣṭhi! Protect this child. Thou art the energy of all the devas, thou art the well wisher of all children, protect like a mother, my son; glory to thee, O Mahâ Śaṣṭhî. As Rudrâṇī in thy awe-inspiring form, destroy all misfortunes. Giver of Life! O Giver of strength, O goddess! protect the child and be auspicious. Protect thou this child born in my family, from the Rakṣasas, the Bhûtas, the Pisâchâs from the Dâkinis, and Yoginîs. Protect like a mother my child from all beasts, and serpents. Thou art, O goddess! the Viṣṇu force, thou art the Brahmâic force, thou the Rudra force, all glory to Thee, O Mahâ Śaṣṭhi. Thou art renowned as Mahâ Śaṣṭhi, the foster-mother of Kârtikeya, may my child live long, free from all calamities, through thy grace."

*Baptism.*—"Then let him baptise the child reciting:—"Let that power be in my child, by which force Kṛiṣṇa upheld with one hand the uprooted hill. May there be peace and prosperity, may all calamities be destroyed, may the sin go back from whence it came."

*Kârtikeya.*—Then pray to Kârtikeya:—"May the Sun and Moon and the Lords of the Quarters, and also Yama and Bhava protect this my child, and take charge of it. Let all the Devas from Indra downwards protect this child in all conditions and times, by day and by night, whether it be alert or heedless."

*A Prayer.*—Then let him recite the Protection hymn as given in the Âyur Veda:—"May Brahmâ always destroy all those Nâgâs, Pisâchâs, Gandharvâs, Pitarâs, Yakṣâs, and Rakṣasâs who want to injure thee. May the Lords of the Quarters and Intermediate Quarters protect thee from Night-wanderers of the earth and sky in all quarters. May the Rîṣis, the Devas, the self-controlled Rajarṣis, the mountains, the rivers, and all seas and oceans protect thee. May Agni protect thy tongue, may Vâyu protect thy breaths called Prâṇas, may Soma protect thy Vyâna, and Parjanya thy Âpâna. May the lightnings protect thy Udâna, and the thunders thy Samâna. May Indra, the Lord of Force, protect thy strength and Brihaspati protect thy will and thoughts. May the Gandharvâs protect thy desires, and may Indra guard thy goodness (Sattva). May the King Varuṇa protect thy intelligence and Ocean guard thy navel; the Sun, thy eyes; the Directions thy ears, and may the Moon protect thy mind. May the Vâyu protect thy nostrils, and the Herbs thy hair of the body. May the Ether protect thy ears; and the Earth thy body, the Fire thy head, Viṣṇu thy prowess and manliness. Brahmâ, the best of all, protect thy hands and feet. May these deities preside over the various parts of thy body always. After destroying all diseases, by reciting the above mantras taught in the Vedas, be thou protected. Mayst thou attain long life. May Viṣṇu say "Peace to thee," may the Nârada and the others say "Peace to thee." May Agni say "Peace," May Vâyu say "Peace," may the Devas and mighty serpents say "Peace," may the Pitâmaha say "Peace." May they all increase thy life."

*Rakṣâ-thread.*—While reciting this stotra (of 11 verses) let him take eleven threads, and make eleven knots, and the nurse (or mother) should put these threads round the



neck of the child. Then fumigate the room (of confinement) by burning white mustard seed, salt and the leaves of *nim* tree.

*Kṣetra-pāla*.—Then do puṇā to Kṣetra-pāla. The Saṅkalpa is :—“I, in such and such country, on such and such day, &c., will worship Kṣetra-pāla with all the worshipful concomitant Devas along with him, in order to procure all good fortune and remove all misfortunes, and to get long life and health for my new-born boy.”

*Bhairava*.—Then he should say :—Bhairavāya Namaḥ, Bhairavam Āvāhayāmi. “Glory to the Terrible, I invoke the Terrible.” “Glory to Kṣetra-pāla. I invoke Kṣetra-pāla. I invoke Gandharvas, I invoke Bhūtas, &c.

*Invocation*.—I invoke Yoginīs and the rest. I invoke the Mothers. I invoke the Ādityās and the rest. I invoke the Wardens of the Quarters. I invoke the Mothers-of-the-Door.”

#### THE BALI OFFERING.

*Bali offering*.—Then having worshipped the invoked Devas, let him give them Bali of fried māṣa pulse (?), reciting the following :—“Peaceful (nirvāṇa), free from agitation, peerless, free from taint, free from modification, awe-inspiring, holding a discus (or wheel), a sceptre, fiery mouthed, like a Rudra in splendour, making noise loud and continuous, with frowning brows, the Terrible, with a trident (śūla) in hand, and a leg of the bed post, myriad times terrible, having a ḍamaru in hand—such is the deva Kṣetra-pāla, protector of the field. I salute him.”

*Bhairava*.—Bhairavāya namaḥ, imām sadīpam māṣa-bhokta-balin samarpayāmi :—“Salutation to Bhairava. This offering of fried māṣa pulse and the lamp I offer to him.”

*Gandharvās*.—“May the semi-divine beings, the Gandharvās, all of whom can assume various forms at will, protect my son ; and being satisfied, accept this bali offering.” Then say Gandharvebhyo namaḥ, &c., as above.

*Kṣetra-pāla*.—O Kṣetra-pāla ! all glory to thee, O giver of all fruits of peace ! accept this bali and remove all calamities from the child.” Say “Kṣetra-pālāya, &c.”

*Ghosts, &c.*—“May all the Bhūtas, Daityās, Piśāchās, and the rest, the Gandharvās and the hosts of Rākṣasās be propitious to me, and accept this bali.” Say Bhūtādibhyo namaḥ, &c.

*Yoginīs*.—“May the Yoginī, the Dākīnī, and the Mothers, wherever they may be dwelling, be all peaceful, and accept this bali of mine.” Say Yoginyādibhyo, &c.

*The Mothers*.—May the semi-divine Mothers, who at will assume many forms, themselves protect my son ; and being pleased accept this bali.” Say Matribhyo namaḥ, &c.

*The Adityas, &c.*—“May all the Grahas like the Ādityas and the rest who always dwell in heaven, protect the child and accept this bali of mine.” Say Ādityādibhyo namaḥ, &c.

*The Dikpālās*.—“May the Guardians of the Quarters and also Indra, &c., dwelling in their respective places become auspicious and accept this bali of mine.” Say Dikpālebhyo namaḥ, &c.

Then salute Chāmūṇḍā by saying “Chāmūṇḍāyai namaḥ : all glory to Chāmūṇḍā.

*The Door Mothers*.—“The six Dvāra-Mataras are Nandā, Nandinī, Vāsiṣṭhā, Vasudevā, Bhārgavā, Jayā-Vijayā. May they accept this bali.” Say Dvāra-matribhyaḥ, &c.

Then recite the following Vaidic mantras :—

*Indra bali*.—Of the Mantra “Trātaram Indram,” the seer is Garga, the Devatā is Indra, the metre is Trīṣṭup, and it is employed in offering bali to Indra,

*Mantra.*—Indra, the Saviour, Indra, the Helper, Indra, the Hero who listens at each invocation,

Śakra I call, Indra invoked of many. May Indra Maghovan prosper and bless us. (Rig Veda, VI, 47. 11).

*Formula.*—Then say :—"To Indra, to his dependents, *i. e.*, family members, to his weapon, to his spouse (or Energy), I offer this māsa-bali along with the candle. O Indra ! protect the quarters, eat the bali, and be the giver of long life to me and my family, be giver of prosperity, be giver of peace, be giver of increase, be giver of contentment, and be giver of welfare."

This formula should be repeated, after the following verses also, substituting for Indra the appropriate name of the Devatā.

*Agni bali.*—Of the Mantra "Agnim dyuttam," the seer is Kāṇva Medhātithi, the Devatā is Agni, the metre is Gāyatrī, and it is employed in offering bali to Agni.

*Mantra.*—We choose Agni, the messenger, the herald, master of all wealth, Well skilled in this our sacrifice. —(Rig Veda, I. 12. 1).

Then say :—"To Agni, to his dependents, &c.," as above.

*Yama bali.*—Of the mantra "Yamāya Somam," the seer is Yama, the Devatā is Yama, the metre is Anuṣṭup and it is employed in offering bali to Yama.

*Mantra.*—To Yama pour the Soma, bring to Yama consecrated gifts.

To Yama sacrifice prepared and heralded by Agni goes.—(Rig Veda, X. 14. 13).

Then, as above, say "To Yama, to his dependents, &c."

*Nirṛiti bali.*—Of the mantra "Mo ṣu naḥ," the seer is Ġhōra Kāṇva, the Devatā is Nirṛiti, the metre is Gāyatrī, and it is employed in offering bali to Nirṛiti.

*Mantra.*—Let not destructive plague or plague hard to be conquered, strike us down :

Let each, with drought, depart from us.—(Rig Veda, I. 38. 6).

Say as above "To Nirṛiti, &c."

*Varuṇa bali.*—Of the Mantra "Tat tvā yāmi," the seer is Sunaḥśepa, the Devatā is Varuṇa, the metre is Triṣṭupa : and it is employed to offer bali to Varuṇa.

*Mantra.*—I ask this of thee with prayer adoring, thy worshipper craves this with his oblation.

Varuṇa, stay thou here and be not angry ; steal not our life from us, O thou Wide Ruler.—(Rig Veda; I. 24. 11).

Say as above "To Varuṇa, &c."

*Vāyu bali.*—Of the mantra "Tava Vāyo," the seer is Âṅgiras, the devatā is Vāyu, the metre is Gāyatrī, and it is employed in offering bali to Vāyu.

*Mantra.*—Wonderful Vāyu, Lord of Right, thou who art Tvasṭar's son-in-law,

Thy saving succour we elect.—(Rig Veda, VIII, 26. 21).

Then say, as above, "To Vāyu, &c."

*Soma bali.*—Of the mantra "Soma dhenum," the seer is Gautama, the Devatā is Soma, the metre is Triṣṭup, and it is employed in offering bali to Soma.

*Mantra.*—To him who worships, Soma give the milch-cow, a fleet steed and a man of active knowledge.

Skilled in home duties, meet for holy synod, for council meet, a glory to his father.—(Rig Veda, I, 91. 20).

Then say, as above, "To Soma, &c."

*Îśāna bali.*—Of the mantra "Tam Îśānam," the seer is Gautama, the Devatā is Îśāna, the metre is Jagatī and it is employed in offering bali to Îśāna.

*Mantra.*—Him we invoke for aid who reigns supreme, the Lord of all that stands or moves, inspirer of the soul.

That Pushan may promote the increase of our wealth, our keeper and our guard infallible for our good.—(Rig Veda. I, 89. 5).

Then say as above "To Îśâna, &c."

*Ananta bali.*—Of the mantra "Sahsra śîrṣâ," the seer is Nārāyaṇa, the Devatâ is Ananta, the metre is Anuṣṭup, and it is employed in offering bali to Ananta.

*Mantra.*—A thousand heads hath Puruṣa, a thousand eyes, a thousand feet.

On every side pervading earth he fills a space ten fingers wide.—(Rig Veda, X, 90. 1).

*Brahmâ bali.*—Of the mantra "Brahmâ Yajñânâm," the seer is Gautama Vâma Deva, the Devatâ is Brahmâ, the metre is Triṣṭup, and it is employed in offering bali to Brahmâ.

*Mantra.*—Eastward at first was Brahmâ generated. Vena overspread the Bright Ones from the summit.

Disclosed his deepest nearest revelations, womb of existent and of non-existent. —(Yajur Veda, XIII, 3).

Then say as above "To Brahmâ, &c."

*Gaṇapati bali.*—Of the mantra "Gaṇânâm tvâ," the seer is Gṛtsamada, the Devatâ is Gaṇapati, the metre is Jagatî, and it is employed in offering bali to Gaṇapati.

*Mantra.*—We call thee, Lord and Leader of the heavenly hosts, the wise among the wise, the famousest of all,

The king, supreme of prayers, O Brahmanaspati, hear us with help ; sit down in place of sacrifice.—(Rig Veda, III, 23. 1).

Then say, as before, "To Gaṇapati, &c."

Then say, addressing Janmadâ:—"O Giver of birth, accept this bali, be thou the giver of long life to me and my family, be giver of prosperity, be giver of peace, be giver of increase, be giver of contentment and welfare. O goddess Śaṣṭhî, accept this bali, be thou giver of long life to me and my family members, be giver of prosperity, be giver of peace, be giver of increase, be giver of contentment and of welfare." Then say addressing Jîvantikâ the same "O Jîvantikâ, &c." Similarly to Indrâdi Lokapâlas, "O Indrâdi Lokapâla, &c."

Then offer bali to the Sun, the Moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, Śaturn, Râhu and Ketu, and Durgâ, with the following ten mantras of the Rig Veda. [For the sake of brevity we give merely the names of Seer, Devatâ and Metre without using any other words].

*The Sun.*—R. Hiranya-stupa, D. Savitâ, Ch. Triṣṭup. I. 35-2.

Throughout the dusky firmament advancing,  
Laying to rest the immortal and the mortal,  
Borne in his golden chariot he cometh,  
Savitar, God who looks on every creature.

Then say as above to the Sun, so and so, &c.

*The Moon.*—R. Gautama, D. Soma, Ch. Gâyatrî. I. 91-17.

Wax, O most gladdening Soma, great through all the rays of light,  
and be

A friend of most illustrious fame to prosper us.

Then say as above to the Moon, so and so, &c.

*Mars.*—R. Virupa, D. Angâraka, Ch. Gâyatrî. VIII. 44-16.

O Agni, Brother, made by strength, Lord of red steeds and brilliant  
sway,

Take pleasure in this laud of mine.

Then say as above to Mars, so and so, &c.

*Mercury*.—R. Somyaḥ, D. Budh, Ch. Trisṭup. X. 101-1.

Wake with one mind, my friends, and kindle Agni, ye  
Who are many and dwell together,  
Agni and Dadhikras and Dawn the Goddess, you,  
Gods with Indra, I call down to help us.

Then say as above to Mercury, so and so, &c.

*Jupiter*.—R. Gritsamaudaḥ, D. Brihaspati, Ch. Trisṭup. 11. 23-15.

Brihaspati, that which the foe deserves not,  
Which shines among the folk effectual, splendid,  
That Son of Law ! which is with might,  
Refulgent—that treasure wonderful bestow thou on us.

Then say to Brihaspati as above. 1.

*Venus*.—R. Pārāśara, D. Śukra, Ch. Dvipada Virat. I. 69-1.

Victorious in the wood, Friend among men,  
Ever he claims obedience asking  
Gracious like peace, blessing like mental power,  
Priest was he, offering-bearer, full of thought.

*Saturn*.—R. Ririmviti, D. Sani, Ch. Ushnik. 8. 18-9

May Agni bless us with his fires, and Surya warm us pleasantly;  
May the pure wind breathe sweet on us,  
and chase our foes.

Then say, "O Sani, &c.

*Rāhu*.—R. Banādeva, D. Rahu, Ch. Gāyatrī. 4. 31-1

With what help will he come to us,  
Wonderful, ever-waxing Friend,  
With what most mighty company ?

*Ketu*.—R. Madhuchanda, D. Ketu, Ch. Gāyatrī. 1.6-3

Thou, making light where no light was,  
And form, O men ! where form was not,  
Wast born together with the Dawns.

Then say "O Ketu, &c.

*Durgā*.—R. Kashyap, D. Durgā, Ch. Trisṭup. 1. 99-1

For Jatavedās let us press the Soma :  
May he consume the wealth of the malignant.  
May Agni carry us through all our troubles,  
Through grief as in a boat across the river.

Then say "O Durga, &c."

Then similarly offer 'Bali' to Kārtikeya saying Bho Kārtikeya, &c.,

To Sword, Bho Kharga, &c, to Arrow, Bho Sara, &c.,  
To Churning Stick, Bho Mantha,  
To Kṣetra-pāl, Bho Kṣetra-pāl.

Then salute Gaṇeśa, Durgā, Iṣṭadevatā, Kuladevatā, Grāmadevata, Shaṭ Kṛittikās,  
Eight Siddhis, Brahmā together with Sarasvatī, Shankara together with Bhawānī, Nārāyaṇa  
together with Lakṣmī, Kārtikeya, Sword, Bamboo, Pestle, Churning Stick, Viṣṇu, Śaṣṭhī  
Devi, Janmadā, Jīvantikā.

Thus having given Bali and offered Pujā, let him give fee to Brāhmaṇas, that the ceremony may be complete. The Saukalpa for giving fee is as follows :—

Kritasya puṣpavidheḥ Saṅgatasidhyartham nānānāmgotrebhyaḥ Brāhmaṇeḥ Khadya-phalambulakṣiṇā kṣīrapatyadidanam Kariṣye.

I shall give fee to these Brāhmaṇas, belonging to various gotras and bearing many names, in order to complete the ceremony of puṣp, the fee to be in the shape of food, fruits, beetle, money, milk, etc.

Then let him offer the fruits of his karma to īśvara, and recite Yasya Smṛitya, &c., Mantrahīnam, etc.

Then let him perform the Ârati of the God, of the mother and of the worshipper (Yajmana) with the mantra Īriyijata, &c.

Then the Brāhmaṇas should give benediction.

The gift made in this Śaṣṭika puṣp is not tainted with the impurity of birth.

As says Vyāsa :—

The goddesses presiding over the chamber of confinement and who are called Janmadā, are worshipped during the birth impurity, because it has been said that in performing the puṣp of these deities on the occasion of birth there is purity instead of impurity. Out of the period of birth impurity the following three days are not considered to be impure, viz., the 1st, the 6th, and the 10th day of the birth of a son.

Let him make the tilak of the child with yellow pigment. Let him tie a goat near the lying-in room, and men armed with weapons keep awake the night according to the custom of the family.

#### THE NĀMAKARAṆA (CHRISTENING) CEREMONY.

Garga.—Says Garga :—“The father alone of the child should name it after the name of the month (in which it is born) or that of the guru or spiritual teacher.” “The names of the month are thus given in the Saṅgraha (1) Kṛiṣṇa, (2) Ananta, (3) Achyuta, (4) Chakrī, (5) Vaikuṇṭha, (6) Janārdana, (7) Upendra, (8) Yajña puruṣa, (9) Vāsudeva, (10) Hari, (11) Yogīśa, and (12) Puṇḍarikākṣa, respectively.”

By “respectively” is meant by the elders, beginning with Mārga Śrīṣa. According to others, beginning with Chaitra. [According to Garga, the name of the months should commence with that of Mārga Śrīṣa. Thus if a child be born in the month of Pauṣa, it will be named Ananta; if in Māgha, Achyuta. If in Phālguna, Chakrī; if in Chaitra, Vaikuṇṭha, &c.]

Vasiṣṭha.—If the proper time of naming is over [then the child should be named] when the moon is in any one of the following constellations, as says Vasiṣṭha :—“Uttarā, Revatī, Hastā, Mūlā, Puṣyā, Śravana, Viśākhā, Svātī, Mrigāśirṣa, Bharanī and Dhaniṣṭhā are praiseworthy stars to name the child.”

The Âpastamba G. S.—Says Âpastamba in his Grihya Sūtra (XV. 8):—“On the tenth day, after the mother has risen and taken a bath, he gives a name to the son. The father and the mother should pronounce that name first. (9) It should be a name of two syllables or of four syllables; the first part should be a noun; the second a verb; it should have a long vowel or the Visarga at the end, should begin with a sonant, and contain a semi-vowel. (10) Or it should contain the particle सु, for such a name has a firm foundation; thus it is said in a Brāhmaṇa.”

Baudhāyana.—Baudhāyana gives the following alternatives :—“The names may be either after those of Rīṣis, or of Devatās, or after one's ancestors.” As Vasiṣṭha, or Nārada (after sages), Viṣṇu or Śiva (after a deity), or Yajña-śarmā or Soma-śarmā, &c.,

(after family ancestors). The names of girl should consist of uneven syllables, i. e., odd syllables : as : Śrî, Gau, Bhârâtî, &c.

[The sense is this: A name given to a child in the vernacular of the country (should never be used) in a Saṅkalpa, &c., for Barbarians only entertain such a false notion that such vernacular names can be used in Saṅkalpa, &c. [Therefore it follows that a man must possess a proper Sanskrit name to entitle him to perform religious ceremonies].

Therefore the pious [Hindu] should give a name [to his child] as laid down in Âśwalâyana Gṛihya Sûtras:—"And let them give him a name beginning with a sonant, with a semi-vowel in it, with the Visarga at its end, consisting of two syllables." Or of four syllables; "Of two syllables, if he is desirous of firm possession. But the name should not consist of a Taddhita affix." [Âśwalâyana, I. 15. 4-6].

Moreover, Âgni, &c., are said to be the names of deities presiding over constellations [and names may be given according to these constellation-devatâs.] For, in all ceremonial works the name given to a person according to the constellation or the deity of the constellation is to be recited. The Vedânga Jyotiṣa also gives the above rules. The elders say, in giving a name regard should be had to the first syllable of the constellation. The same is mentioned in some Griya Pariṣiṣṭhas also.

#### THE SECRET NAME.

Âpastamba further says:—"And he gives him a Nakṣatra name." "That is secret." (Grihya-Sûtra. 6 Patala, Sect. 15, verses 2 and 3).

Âśwalâyana says:—

"And let him also find out (for the child) a name to be used at respectful salutations (such as that due to the Âchârya at the ceremony of the initiation); that his mother and father (alone) should know till his initiation."

This is the custom of the elders and the Siṣṭhas in the matter of giving names. Therefore in the Jyotiṣa, it is said, that this secret name alone is to be used in all ceremonies. This secret name is formed, according to some, by adding a Taddhita affix to the name of the constellation. Thus a child born under Rohini nakṣatra is called Rauhiṇa, &c. [some constellations, such as Tishyâ, Aśleṣâ, Hastâ, Viśâkhâ, Anurâdhâ, Aśâdhâ, Śraviṣṭhâ, remain unchanged in forming names. Such as a child born under Tiṣya would be called Tiṣya, &c.]

Note:—In the Hiranyakeṣiṇ G. S. the following rule is laid down:—"He should give him two names. For it is understood (Taitt. Saṁhita, VI. 3. 1. 3.) Therefore a Brâhmana who has two names, will have success. The second name should be a Nakṣatra name. The one name should be secret; by the other they should call him." (II. 1. 4. 12-14).

Manu lays down the following rules:—II, 30-33.

But let (the father perform or) cause to be performed the Nâmadheya (the rite of naming the child) on the tenth or twelfth (day after birth), or on a lucky lunar day in a lucky muhūrta, under an auspicious constellation.

Let, (the first part of) a Brâhman's name (denote something) auspicious, a Kṣatriya's be connected with power, and a Vaiśya's with wealth, but a Śûdra's (express something) contemptible.

(The second part of) a Brâhman's (name) shall be (a word) implying happiness, of a Kṣatriya's (a word) implying protection, of a Vaiśya's (a term) expressive of thriving, and of a Śûdra's (an expression) denoting service.

The names of women should be easy to pronounce, not imply anything dreadful, possess a plain meaning, be pleasing and auspicious, end in long vowels, and contain a word of benediction.

The following are the names of the constellations together with their Devatās and the first letter of the name which should be given to the boy.

Name of the Star.	Devatā.	The first letter of child's name.
Aśvini	... Aśvini Kumāra	... Chû, che, cho, là, चू, चे, चो, ला.
Bharani	... Yama Rājā	... Li, lû, le, lo, ली, लू, ले, लो.
Krittikā	... Agni	... A, i, u, e, अ, इ, उ, ए.
Rohiṇi	... Brahmā	... O, vā, vî, vû, ओ, वा, वी, वू.
Mrigaśīrāḥ	... Chandramā	... Ve, vo, kâ, kî, वे, वो, का, की.
Ârdrā	... Śiva	... Ku, gha, ù, chha, कु, घ, ङ, छ.
Punarvasu	... Aditi	... Ke, kô, hâ, hi, के, को, हा, हि.
Puṣyā	... Brihaspati	... Hû, he, ho, dâ, हू, हे, हो, डा.
Aśleṣā	... Sarpa	... Dî, dû, dē, dō, डी, डू, डे, डो.
Maghā	... Pitar	... Mâ, mî, mû, me, मा, मी, मू, मे.
Purva Phālguni	... Bhaga	... Mo, t̄a, t̄i, t̄û, मो, दा, दी, दू.
Uttara Phālguni	... Aryamā	... T̄a, t̄o, p̄a, p̄i, दा, दो, पा, पी.
Hastā	... Sūrya	... Pû, ṣa, ṇa, d̄ha, पू, ष, ण, ढ.
Chitrā	... Tvaṣṭā	... Pe, po, rā, rî, पे, पो, रा, री.
Svātî	... Pavana	... Rû, re, ro, t̄a, रू, रे, रो, ता.
Viśākhā	... Indrāgni	... Tî, ta, te, to, ती, त, ते, तो.
Anurādhā	... Mitra	... Na, nî, nû, i.e, न, नी, नू, ने.
Jyēṣṭhā	... Indra	... No, ya, yî, yû, नो, य, यी, यू.
Mulā	... Rākṣasa	... Ya, ye, bhâ, bhî, य, ये, भा, भी.
Purvāṣāḍhā	... Jala	... Mû, dha, pha, d̄ha, मू, ध, फ, ढ.
Uttarāṣāḍhā	... Viśvedeva	... Bhe, bho, bhû, bhi, भे, भो, भू, भी.
Abhijit	... Prajâpati or Vidhi	... Jû, je, jo, kha, जू, जे, जो, ख.
Śravanā	... Viṣṇu	... Khi, khû, khe, kho, खि, खू, खे, खो.
Dhanīṣṭhā	... Vasu	... Ga, gî, gû, ge, ग, गी, गू, गे.
Śatatāraka (or Satabhiṣā)	... Varuṇa	... Go, sâ, sî, sû, गो, सा, सी, सू.
Purva Bhādrapada	... Ajapāda	... Se, so, dâ, dî, से, सो, दा, दी.
Uttara Bhādrapada	... Ahirbadhnya	... Dû, tha, jha, ña, दू, थ, झ, ञ.
Revatî	... Pûṣā	... De, do, cha, chî, दे, दो, च, ची.

*Mitākṣarā explained.*—Vijñāneśvara uses the word “वा” in the sentence “कुलदेवता सम्बद्धे वा” || Here the word “वा” is to be interpreted as च, i. e., ‘and,’ so that the other names may be combined. (In western provinces the family name and the father's name are generally combined with one's own name.)

#### THE NIṢKRAMAṆA CEREMONY OR THE FIRST LEAVING OF THE HOUSE.

Though Vijñāneśvara explains the “Niṣkramaṇa” ceremony as showing the sun to the child, yet it includes showing the moon also or bowing to a Devatā as mentioned in other places. As says “Yama” in Jyotirnivadha in the third or the fourth month the Niṣkramaṇa of the child should be performed, in the third month the sun should be shown to the child, and in the fourth month the moon should be shown to the child.

According to Garga this ceremony may be performed along with that of Annaprâśana, first feeding the child with rice.

According to Skanda Purâṇa the twelfth day is also the time for performing this rite :—"O King, on the twelfth day the Niṣkramaṇa of the child from the house should be performed and in the fifth month he should be made to sit on the earth. In that month all planets become auspicious specially the son of earth (Mars) (It should be done in the following Nakṣatras). The three Uttara-nakṣatras are benedictory, so also Puṣyâ, Jyêṣṭhâ, Abhijit, Hastâ, Âṣvini and Anurâdhâ. According to Pârijâta it includes the Upaveśana ceremony mentioned in the Padma-Purâṇa.

#### THE UPAVEŚANA

First reciting Svasti-vâchana, and after worshipping Varâha, the Earth, Devas and Gurus and Brâhmaṇas, seat the child on the maṇḍala (the paṇḍal). Then recite the following mantras :—"O Earth! O Bright one! Protect this child always in all conditions. O Auspicious one! O Beloved of Hari! Give him the full term of his life. Destroy (consume) all enemies who intend to shorten his life, or injure his health or wealth. O Mother! Thou art the upholder of all beings, and Great. O Mother! protect this boy; and may Brahmâ also give sanction to it."

Then make the priests to recite benediction.

#### THE ANNAPRÂŚANA.

Vijñâneśvara says : "in the sixth month the annaprâśana should take place." In the Âpastamba G. S., the same is mentioned :—"In the sixth month after the child's birth." (Âp. 16. 1.) When, however, the proper time for Annaprâśana (the first feeding the child with solid food, such as boiled rice, &c.) is past, then the inauspicious time owing to Astâdi should be observed. (The Astâdi doṣa does not apply if the ceremony is done in due time). Yama says :—"It may be performed in the eighth month also." Laugâkṣi says : "The Annaprâśana may take place in the sixth month or when the child has cut its first teeth." Śaṅkha says :—"The Annaprâśana should be performed on the expiry of one year, or half a year." Mâdhava says : "It may be done according to the rule laid down in one's own Gṛhya Sûtra."

#### THE EAR-BORING.

Garga says :—"The ceremony of boring the ear is performed in the sixth, seventh, eighth or twelfth month, in order to secure prosperity, long life and health." Bṛhaspati says : "The following tithis are auspicious for boring ceremony :—the second, the tenth, the sixth, the seventh, the thirteenth, the twelfth, the ninth and the third days of the moon."

The ear-boring ceremony includes the ceremony quoted in the Hemâdri from Jyotiṣa :—"In the bright half of the moon the ear-boring ceremony is auspicious on an auspicious day in the months of Kârtika, Pauṣa, Chaitra or Phâlguna. A tailor should pierce the ear of the child whose teeth have not yet come out, and who is placed on the lap of its mother, with a needle having in it two threads. The boring ceremony should be done in a pure lagna, on Thursday or Friday, when the moon is propitious, and in any one of the following Nikṣatras, viz., Hastâ, Âṣvini, Svâti, Punarvasu, Tiṣya, Mrigâśiras, Chitrâ, Śravanâ, Revatî."

#### THE BIRTH-DAY ANNIVERSARY.

So also must be observed by every one his birth-day annual ceremony. As in the Bhaviṣya : "Having bathed with auspicious water, every one on his birth-day should wear a new dress, and worship the Long-lived ones, such as, Mârkaṇḍeya, the long-lived Vyâsa, Paraśu Rama, Âyvatthâman, Kṛpâcharya, Balî Râjâ, Prahlâda, Haṇṇumanta,



Bibhīṣana. Let every man worship these (human immortals in flesh) with devotion and faith, on the day of his birth (*i. e.*) when the tithi and the nakṣatra are the same. He should worship Ṣaṣṭhi also with curd-offering every year on his birth-day." In the Tithi-tattva, tila (sesamum) homa is ordained to be offered to those personages reciting their names. Says the Aditya Purāṇa:—"All should bathe in holy waters on the day of their birth anniversary, and should worship with great care the spiritual Teacher, the Fire, and Brāhmaṇas. He should celebrate that day as a festival every year in honor of his star, the parents and Lord Prajāpati."

Bhaṣiṣya quoted in Kṛitya Chintāmani says:—"He should worship the Sun and Gaṇeśa with sugar, milk, sesamum, incense, nim, rice, Durba grass and yellow pigment, and tie a Rakṣā thread on his both arms: and then say "let me be as long lived as thou art: let me be always handsome, wealthy, and lucky and fortunate. O Mārkaṇḍeya! O thou who livest upto the end of seven kalpas! Salutation to thee. O Lord! O Sage! be gracious and give success, health and long life. As thou, O Sage, art long-lived among sages, so make me long-lived among men. I drink this milk containing sesamum and sugar, which has been offered to Markaṇḍeya, in order to get increase of life." Thus reciting he should drink the milk to the extent of half añjali (handful). In the Skanda quoted in the Tithi-Tattva there is this especial rule laid down:—"On the Birth-day anniversary one should avoid the cutting of nails and the shaving of hair, sexual intercourse, journey, meat-food, quarrel, and injuring any creature."

This may be done every year in order to get increase of life. The ritual is as follows:—

#### THE RITUAL.

First rub tila-oil (sesamum oil) on the body, put curd and durvā (tilaka) on the forehead, and let him bathe in hot water. After that, having bathed in water in which Kesara (Saffron) has been thrown, and wearing a white dhoti and a white chādar, and having made āchamana and prāṇāyāma, let him recite the mantra:—"Sumukhaś chaikadantas," &c., and taking water containing rice, flower, fruit and a copper pice (or any other metal to be given as dakṣiṇā) let him utter the following Saṅkalpa:—"On such and such day, in ..... country. I ..... on my birth-day, in order to get life, fame, sons and grandsons and prosperity, and to please Mārkaṇḍeya and the rest, will worship Mārkaṇḍeya and others."

Then worship Gaṇeśa to remove all obstacles, and utter Svastivāchana, let him invoke the devatā on the seat on which are placed small heaps of unhusked rice. The Puṇjā mantras are:—Markaṇḍeya Namah, Aśvathāmne Namah, Balaye Namah, Vyāsāya Namah, Hanumate Namah, Vibhīṣaṇāya Namah, Kpipāya Namah, Paraśu Rāmāya Namah. These eight should be invoked also; as Markaṇḍeyam Āvāhayāmi, &c., before offering puṇjā to them. Then offer the following prayer:—

*Mārkaṇḍeya*.—O mighty armed Mārkaṇḍeya! who livest up to the end of seven Kalpas! Let me be as long-lived as thou, O great sage. Through great penance and austerity of yore performed by thee, O sage! thou didst obtain life of seven Kalpas on thy birth-day. Give me long life and fame, fortune and wealth, O great sage Mārkaṇḍeya! Give me sons, grandsons and great-grandsons.

*Aśvathāman*.—O son of Droṇa! O Great One born of lunar energy! Be thou giver of strength and good luck. Salutation to thee, O Aśvathaman!

*Bali*.—O King, born in the Daitya Race! O Giver of everything to Hari in ancient times! I have come to thee seeking thy aid and help. Give me long life.

*Vyāsa*.—O sage! Who knowest the past, present and future! O born of Nārāyaṇa's portion! Give me long life, O Vyāsa!

*Hanumant.*—O son of Añjanâ ! O King of monkeys ! O most powerful One ! O Beloved of Râma ! Salutation to thee, O Hanumân ! protect me always.

*Bibhīṣaṇa.*—O Bibhīṣaṇa, salutation to thee ! O thou messenger of Râma in difficulty ! O son of Paustya ! Give me long life, health and prosperity.

*Kripācāhrya.*—O king of twice-born ! O Teacher of the Bharata People ! O Skilled in all sciences and arts ! I have come to thy refuge ! O merciful One ! Have mercy on me.

*Pāraśu Rama.*—O son of Reṇukâ ! O thou of great energy ! O destroyer of Kṣatriya race ! Give me long life, O King, Salutation to thee, O son of Jâmadâgni !

Then taking in the hollow of his palm, milk in which have been thrown gūḍa (sugar) and sesamum, and reciting the following mantras, let him drink three times that milk. This is the mantra :—"O Markaṇḍeya ! O mighty armed ! I drink this milk containing sesamum and gūḍa (sugar) to the extent of half an añjali, in order to get increase of life."

Then recite "Yasya Smṛityā, &c." And "Pramādāt Kurvatam," &c. and by "Uttīṣṭha Brahmaṇaspatē, &c." Let him make visarjana and bid farewell ! Offer the fruit of the karma to Lord.

[Note.--The Mantras are given below :--

यस्य स्मृत्या च नामोक्त्या तपोयज्ञक्रियादिषु ।

न्यूनं सम्पूर्णतां याति सद्यो वन्दे तमच्युतम् ॥

I praise that Eternal Lord by remembering whom and uttering whose name all deficiencies are supplied in every sacrifice and ceremony.

प्रमादात्कुर्वतां कर्म प्रच्यवेताध्वरेषु यत् ।

स्मरणादेव तद्विष्णोः सम्पूर्णं स्यादिति स्मृतिः ॥

"Whatever defects occur in any ceremony through oversight or carelessness, they all become rectified by remembering Viṣṇu"—so declare the Scriptures.]

#### THE TONSURE.

The Chūḍākarana or tonsure should be performed according to family usage. The manner of doing it is according to family usage. The Mitākṣarā uses the words Chūḍākaranaṁ tu yathākulam kāryam iti. The force of "tu" is that of 'cha' or and : and that iti=eva. Though the word Kāryam is in the Neuter gender, it is illustrative of the masculine nouns also. [All ceremonies whether denoted by masculine or feminine nouns mentioned in verses 11 and 12 must be performed, and the method of their performance may be according to one's own family usage. In the case of tonsure, no time is fixed by Yājñavalkya. The time depends upon the family usage]. By using the words yathākulam 'according to family custom,' all alternatives are included.

As says Āpastamba G. S. (XVI. 3.) "In the third year after his birth, the chaula or tonsure is performed under the Nakṣatra of the two Punarvasus.

So also say Garga, Nārada, and Vaijavāpa. But Āśvalāyana makes a distinction, on the authority of this text of Āśvalāyana :—"The tonsure rite is ordained praiseworthy when performed in the third or fifth year, or before that in an un-even year, or along with Upanayana (investiture with sacred thread)." So also the Kārikā :—"The tonsure should be performed before the end of the first year or the second year or the third year, or such is the authority. But some say according to one's family custom or along with upanayana."

In another place :—" It is middling, if performed in the fifth or seventh year from birth, it is worst, if done in the tenth or eleventh year of conception." A special rule is laid down in Nāradya :—" The tonsure should not be performed, if the mother of the boy is pregnant ; but even if pregnant, it may be performed if the boy is above five years of age. If there be an abortion, or the child die after birth, or when done along with upanayana, there is incurred no guilt."

So says Brihaspati :—" The tonsure should not be performed, if the mother of the boy be pregnant ; but it may be done even in pregnancy, if it is below five months, but never if above that."

In the Dharma Prakāśa, in the chapter on Tonsure, a prohibition is declared with regard to upanayana also, by showing its danger to the husband of the pregnant wife :—" Marriage, upanayana and bathing in milk shorten the lives of the husbands of the pregnant women." The marriage here means one's own marriage or of one's children. The upanayana refers to the upanayana of the children alone (of course it cannot refer to the upanayana of the husband). [In other words, a husband incurs the danger of shortening his life, if he performs the marriage of his children or his own, when his wife is pregnant ; so also if he performs the upanayana of any one of his children]. This prohibition does not apply to tonsure however : for the prohibition is stated only when the mother of the child to be invested with thread is pregnant (and not when step-mothers are pregnant). This prohibition does not apply if any other wife of the father is pregnant. As says a text :—" When the mother of the child is pregnant, one should not perform the initiation or tonsure of that child. If it is done after the fifth month of pregnancy, there is death of the mother, &c."

" If on the day of Abhyudaya Śrāddha which is to be performed on the occasion of any sacrament relating to the son, the wife gets monthly course, the father should not perform the Śrāddha." But in the Saṅgraha :—" The tonsure, the initiation, the marriage, the installation of a sacred image, &c., may be done during such impurity, or impurity arising from birth or death, by performing *homa* with ghee, &c., and making gifts of milch cows."

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa lays down this special rule :—" So long as there is no initiation, no guilt is incurred by eating prohibited food or drink or uttering untrue and abusive speech." So also Vasiṣṭha :—" He can perform no karma so long as there is no tying the girdle (initiation) ; he exists like a Śūdra so long as he is not born again in the Vedas," (cf. Baudh., I. 2-3. 6.). A special rule is laid down by Vṛiddha Śātātapa as quoted by Aparārka :—" Even the Śiṣu must perform abhyukṣaṇa (sprinkling purification) ; even the bāla must do the āchamana, even the kumāra must bathe when touching a woman in courses. A child is called bāla so long as tonsure is not performed, he is a Śiṣu so long as feeding with rice (Annaprāśana) ceremony is not performed ; and he is called kumāraka so long as he is not invested with maunī (sacred girdle)."

*Prāyaścitta for omission.*—If the rites of Garbhādhāna, &c., have not been performed with regard to a child, then *prāyaścitta* should be done for such omission : and *homa* or fire-offering should be done as a *prāyaścitta* for letting pass the proper time : and afterwards the tonsure and its appropriate *homa* should be done. As says Śaunaka :—" If the proper rites of Garbhādhāna upto tonsure have not been done then fire-sacrifice should be performed with ghee and uttering the vyāhritis as a penance ; and then the other rite should be performed. For the omission of each ceremony a quarter *kṛichhra* penance should be observed, for the omission of tonsure half a *kṛichhra*. This is the law when the omission is due to some calamity. But if the omission is voluntary, then the penance is double." In the Trikāṇḍī we read :—" When the rites have been omitted and the

time for performing has gone, and the time for performing another rite has come, then the rites omitted must be performed first (though out of time), and then the rite in question should be performed."

### THE ŚIKHÂ OR THE LOCKS.

Now we shall say something about the mode of keeping the head-tuft. Laugākṣi quoted by Mādhava declares:—"The persons belonging to Vasiṣṭha Gotra should keep the tuft towards the right part of the hair; those of Atri and Kaśyapa, on both sides; of Bhṛigu, shaven; of Angiras, five-tufts, for the sake of auspiciousness; others according to the custom of their family." The word 'Kamuja' or tuft means Keśapankti or arrangement of hair or śikhâ, i. e., lock of hair. This different arrangement of hair for different gotras depends upon the particular Śākhâ to which one belongs. For the Taittirīyas, however, the number of tufts is according to the number of their Pravara. In the Grihya Sūtras:—"Having combed the hair in silence, he arranges the locks which are left over, according to the fashion of his ancestral Rishi or according to what family he belongs" (cf. Hiranya-kośin, II. 6. 12).

In the Prayoga Ratna of the author of Nirṇaya Sindhu:—"The tuft should be in the middle of the head, but of the Vasiṣṭhas towards right, and of Atri and Kaśyapa clans, on both sides." So also in the Mādhaviya. But Āpastamba says:—"He combs the hair silently, and arranges the locks in the fashion of his ancestral Rishi." (Āp. G. S., VI. 16. 6) According to the number of Pravara and Rishi at the time of initiation all these locks except the middle one are cut, from all different directions. "He shaves his hair with the different Mantras, towards the different (four) directions." (Āp., IV. 10. 6.)

The middle lock (called Śikhâ *par excellence*) should however be *never* cut for Śruti prohibits it, and so also the Smṛiti:—"He is as if naked and uncovered who is totally shaven, this Śikhâ is his covering."

"A person without śikhâ and without sacred thread cannot perform any sacred rite, for all that he does is unfructuous."

An exception to this is mentioned in Sudarśana Bhāṣya on Āp. G. S. where the shaving of the śikhâ also is ordained when a person is engaged in a Sattrā.

The saying that "the kumâras are as if without śikhâs," is according to the Chhandogas.

*The Śūdras.*—The above rules do not apply to the Śūdras. For says Vasiṣṭha:—"For a Śūdra there is no rule as to the arrangement of hair." In the Padma Purāṇa it is said that a Śūdra should keep no śikhâ, nor wear sacred thread, nor utter refined (Sanskṛita) speech. This prohibition applies only to low caste (asat) Śūdras and not to high caste (sat) Śūdra, according to some. Others say it is optional for a Śūdra to keep śikhâ. Therefore says Hārita:—"If a woman or a Śūdra, through anger or Vairāgya, cut off their śikhâ, they should perform the Prājāpatya penance. Otherwise they do not get release from their sin." The keeping of śikhâ by a Śūdra depends upon the custom of the country.

*The summary.*—The conclusion of all the above texts is this. For the Āpastambas it is laid down that at the time of Chūḍakarman they should keep or make śikhâs—one lock if the Rishi be one, two śikhâs or locks if the Rishis be two and so on. They may keep these locks throughout their life, or cut them all except the middle one, at the time of upanayana. Thus it is established that the middle lock should never be cut at the time of upanayana, all the other locks may be cut. Of course, the ascetics, the persons engaged in performing any prāyaścitta, or a big sattrā cut off even the middle lock and become totally shaven.

Now we shall give here the Sūtras of Āpastamba on this subject explained according to the commentary of Śudarśanāchārya, so far as necessary (Āp. G. S., III. 10. 1 to 8.)

1. We shall explain the upanyana or initiation of the student. 2. Let him initiate a Brāhmaṇa in the eighth year after the conception. 3. A Rājanya in the eleventh, a Vaiśya in the twelfth year after the conception. 4. Spring, summer, autumn : these are the fit seasons, for the upanayana, corresponding to the order of the castes. 5. The boy's father serves food to Brāhmaṇas and causes them to pronounce auspicious wishes, and serves food to the boy. The teacher pours together, with the first Yajuṣ of the next Anuvāka warm and cold water, pouring the warm water into the cold, and moistens the boy's head with the next verse (M. II. 1. 2). 6. Having put three darbha blades into his hair towards each of the four directions, the teacher (?) shaves his hair with the next four verses (M. II. 1. 3-6) with the different mantras, towards the four different directions. 7. With the following verse (M. II. 1-7) somebody addresses him while he is shaving. 8. Towards the south, his mother or a Brahmachârin strews barley grains on a lump of bulls dung ; with this dung she catches up the hair that is cut off and puts it down with the next verse (M. II. 1. 8) at the root of an uḍumbara tree or in a tuft of darbha grass." (Āp. G. S., IV. 10 1-8). Then further on Âpastamba mentions that in the samâvartana also the rites are the same, so far as the cutting of the hair is concerned. "The rites beginning with the pouring together of warm and cold water down to the burying of the hair are the same as above." (Āp. G. S., V. 12. 3) [As regards tonsure he says :—] "In the third year after his birth, the chaula or tonsure is performed, under the Nakṣatra of the two Punarvasus. Brāhmaṇas are entertained with food as at the initiation. The putting of wood on the fire, &c., is performed as at the Simantonnayana. He makes the boy sit down to the west of the fire, facing the east, combs his hair silently with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, with three darbha blades, and with a bunch of unripe Uḍumbara fruits ; and he makes as many locks as are the number of the Rîṣis in his Pravara or according to their family custom. The ceremonies beginning with the pouring together of warm and cold water and ending with the putting down of the hair are the same." (Āp. G. S., VI. 16-3 to 6). Thus if there is only one Rîṣi in his Pravara, he makes one lock ; if there are two Rîṣis, then two locks and so on, or the number and the fashion of śikhâs may depend upon their family custom.

"The Godâna is performed in the sixteenth year, in exactly the same way, or optionally under another constellation." (Ibid., VI. 16. 12.) The Godâna is the name of a ceremony. It is the rite of shaving two particular portions of the head. The author next declares an option :—

"Or he may perform the Godâna sacred to Agni." (Ibid, VI. 16. 13.) That is, he should become a Brahmachârin. "The difference between the chaula and the Godâna is that at the Godâna the whole hair is shaven, without leaving the locks." (Ibid, VI. 16. 15). The śikhâ also is removed in this ceremony. The Âchârya or the Teacher should shave the boy in Godâna ceremony : and the gift should be given to the Teacher only. From this text "the difference between the Chaula and Godâna, &c.," we infer that even the śikhâ lock is cut in this Godâna ceremony, as it is cut when one engages in a Sattra. This is the opinion of Śudarśanâcharya, the commentator on the Âpastambya Grihya Sutras. While others differ from him and say on the authority of texts already quoted, that except in sattra, &c., the śikhâ should never be cut, and as Godâna is not mentioned among those exceptions, the śikhâ should not be cut in the Godâna ceremony.

Baudhâyana lays down a similar rule :—"In the sixteenth year, the Godâna is performed : and like the tonsure, silently. The difference between the two is that at the Godâna, the whole hair is shaven and he gives a cow to the teacher ; or becomes an Agni-Godâna (a Brahmachârin), &c."

So also Hiranyakeśin (II. 6. 16) :—"In the same way the Godâna karman is performed in the sixteenth year. He has him shaven including the top-lock. Some declare

that he leaves there the top-lock, or he performs Godâna sacred to Agni. He gives a cow to his Guru."

[Then Bâlabhātṭa gives a summary of all the above opinions].

[Tying the top-lock]. The śikhâ is tied by giving it two turns and a half and reciting the Gâyatrî.

#### NOTES.

The following selections from the Grihya Sûtras show how the Pumsavana, and Simantonayana ceremonies were performed in ancient times:—

#### THE PUMSAVANA.

The *Pumsavana*, i. e., the ceremony to secure the birth of a male child.

#### SÂNKHÂYANA, I. 20.

(1) In the third month, the *Pumsavana*, i. e., the ceremony to secure the birth of a male child.

(2) Under (the Nakṣatra) Puṣya or Śravaṇâ.

(3) Having pounded a Soma stalk, or a Kusâ-needle, or the last shoot of a Nyagrodha trunk or the part of a sacrificial post which is exposed to the fire.

(4) Or (having taken) after the completion of a sacrifice the remnants from the Juhû ladle.

(5) Let him sprinkle it into her right nostril with the four verses, "By Agni may good" (Rig-veda, I. 1, 3), "That sperm to us (III, 4, 9), "May he succeed who lights fire" (V. 37, 2). "Of tawny shape" (II, 3, 9), with Svâhâ at the end (of each verse).

#### ASVALÂYANA\*GRIHYA SÛTRA. I. 13.

1. The Upaniṣad (treats of) the Garbhâlambhana, the *Pumsavana* and the Anavalobhana (i. e., the ceremonies for securing the conception of a child, the male gender of the child, and for preventing disturbances which could endanger the embryo).

2. If he does not study (that Upaniṣad) he should in the third month of her pregnancy, under (the Nakṣatra) Tiṣyâ, give to eat (to the wife), after she has fasted, in curds from a cow which has a calf of the same colour (with herself) two beans and one barley grain for each handful of curds.

3. To this question, 'What does thou drink?' 'What does thou drink?' she should thrice reply, "Generation of a male child! Generation of a male child."

4. Thus three handfuls (of curds).

5. He then inserts into her right nostril, in the shadow of a round apartment, (the sap of) an herb which is not faded.

6. According to some (teachers) with the Prajâvat, and Jivaputra hymns.

7. Having sacrificed of a mess of cooked food sacred to Prajâpati, he should touch the place of her heart with the (verse.) "What is hidden, O thou whose hair is well parted, in thy heart, in Prajâpati, that I know; such is my belief. May I not fall into distress that comes from sons."

#### PÂRASKARA GRIHYA SÛTRA. I. 14.

1. Now the *Pumsavana*, i. e., the ceremony to secure the birth of a male child,

2. Before (the child in his mother's womb) moves, in the second or third month (of pregnancy).

3. On a day on which the moon stands in conjunction with a Nakṣatra (that has a name) of masculine gender, on that day, after having caused (his wife) to fast, to bathe, and to put on two garments which have not yet been washed, and after having in the night-time crushed in water descending roots and shoots of a Nyagrodha tree, he inserts (that into her right nostril) as above, with the two (verses). 'The gold child' (Vaj. Samh., XIII, 4) and "formed of water" (Ibid, XXXI, 17);

4. A Kuśa needle and a Soma stalk, according to some (teachers).

5. And he puts gall of a tortoise on her lap. If he desires 'May (the son) become valiant' he recites over him (*i. e.*, over the embryo) modifying the rite (?) 'The Suparṇa art thou' (Vāj. Saṁh., XII, 4) (the Yajus) before (the formulas called) "Steps of Viṣṇu."

### KHÂDIRA GRĪHYA-SÛTRA. II. 2.

17. In the third month of the first pregnancy (of the sacrificer's wife he should perform) the Pūṁsavana [*i. e.*, the ceremony to secure the birth of a (male child), son.]

18. After she has bathed, her husband should put on her a (new) garment that has not yet been washed, and after having sacrificed he should stand behind her.

19. Grasping down over her right shoulder he should touch the uncovered place of her navel with (the verse) 'the two men,' (M. B. I, 4, 8.)

20. Then another (ceremony). Having bought for three times seven barley corns or beans, a Nyagrodha-shoot which has fruits on both sides, which is not dry, and touched by worms, he should set that up with (the formula), "Ye herbs everywhere, being well-minded, bestow strength on this (shoot); for it will do its work."

21. He then should take it and place it in the open air.

22. A girl, or a (wife) devoted (to her husband), or a student, or a Brāhmanī should pound (that Nyagrodha-shoot) without moving backward (the stone with which she pounds it.)

23. (The husband) should make (the wife) who has bathed, lie down, and should insert (that pounded substance) into her right nostril with (the verse), 'A man is Agni' (M. B. I, 4, 9).

### GOBHILA GRĪHYA-SÛTRA II. 6.

1. The beginning of the third month of pregnancy is the time for the Pūṁsavana (*i. e.*, the ceremony to secure the birth of a son).

2. In the morning, after she has been washed, sitting on northward-pointed Darbha-grass, (all over her body) including her head, she sits down to the west of the fire on northward-pointed Darbha grass, facing the east.

3. Her husband, standing behind her, should grasp down with his right hand over her right shoulder, and should touch the uncovered place of her navel with the verse, 'The two men, Mitra and Varuṇa' (M. B. I, 4, 8).

4. Then they may do what they like.

5. Then afterwards (the following ceremony should be performed).

6. In a north-easterly direction, having bought for three times seven barley corns or beans a Nyagrodha-shoot which has fruits on both sides, which is not dry and not touched by worms, he should set that up.

7. (He buys it with the Mantras):—

"If thou belongest to Soma, I buy thee for the King Soma.

"If thou belongest to Varuṇa, I buy thee for the King Varuṇa.

"If thou belongest to the Vasus, I buy thee for the Vasus.

"If thou belongest to the Rudras, I buy thee for the Rudras.

"If thou belongest to the Âdityas, I buy thee for the Âdityas.

"If thou belongest to the Maruts, I buy thee for the Maruts.

"If thou belongest to the Viśve-devās, I buy thee for the Viśve-devās.

8. He should set it up with (the mantras), 'Ye herbs, being well-minded, bestow strength on this (shoot); for it will do its work.' Then he should put grass around it, should take it, and place it in the open air.

9. Having washed a nether millstone, a student or a (wife) devoted (to her husband), a person who is a Brâhmaṇa by birth (only and not by learning), or a girl, pounds (that Nyagrodha-shoot) without moving backward (the stone with which she pounds it).

10. In the morning, after she has been washed, sitting on northward-pointed Darbha grass, (all over her body) including her head, she lies down to the west of the fire on northward-pointed Darbha grass, with her head to the east.

11. Her husband, standing behind her, should seize (the pounded Nyagrodha-shoot) with the thumb and the fourth finger of his right hand, and should insert it into her right nostril with the verse 'A man is Agni, a man is Indra' (M. B. 1, 4, 9.).

12. Then they should do what they like.

### HIRANYAKESIN GRIHYA-SÛTRA.

#### *Praśna II, Patala I, Sec. 2.*

1. Now (follows) the Pumsavana (*i.e.*, the ceremony for securing the birth of a male child).

2. In the third month, in the fortnight of the increasing moon, under an auspicious constellation, in a round apartment, he gives her a barley-grain in her right hand with (the formula), "A man art thou;"

3. With (the formula) "The two testicles are ye" two mustard seeds or two beans, on both sides of that barley-grain.

4. With (the formula) "Svavritat" ? (he pours) a drop of curds (on those grains). That he gives her to eat.

5. After she has sipped water, he touches her belly with (the mantra) 'with my ten (fingers) I touch thee that thou mayest give birth to a child after ten months.'

6. (He pounds) the last shoot of a Nyagrodha trunk (and mixes the powder) with ghce, or a silk worm (and mixes the powder) with a pap prepared of panick seeds, or a splinter of a sacrificial post taken from the north-easterly part (of that post) exposed to the fire, or he takes ashes or soot, of a fire that has been kindled by attrition, and inserts that into the right nostril of the (the wife) whose head rests on the widely spread root (of an uḍambara tree)

7. If she miscarries, he should three times stroke (her body), from the navel upwards with her wet hand, with (the mantra) "Thitherwards, not hitherwards, may Tvaṣṭri bind thee in his bonds. Making (the mother) enter upon the seasons. Live ten months (in my mother's womb) ; do not bring death to men."

8. When her labour comes on he preforms the kshipraprasavana (*i.e.*, the ceremony for accelerating the delivery). Having placed a water pot near her head and a Tûryanti plant near her feet, he touches her belly.

### GRIHYA-SÛTRA OF ÂPASTAMBA. VI. XIV.

9. The Pumsavana (*i.e.*, the ceremony to secure the birth of a male child) is performed when the pregnancy has become visible, under the constellation Tisya.

10. From branch of a Nyagrodha tree which points eastward or northward, he takes a shoot with two (fruits that look like) testicles. The putting (of wood) on the fire, etc., is performed as at the Simantonnayana.

11. He causes a girl who has not yet attained maturity to pound (the Nyagrodha shoot) on an upper millstone with another upper millstone and to pour water on it; then he makes his wife lie down on her back to the west of the fire, facing the east and inserts (the pounded substance) with his thumb into her right nostril, with the next yajus (II, 11, 13.) Then she will give birth to a son.



## THE SÎMANTONNAYANA.

## SÂNKHÂYANA GRIHYA-SÛTRA, I. 22.

1. In the seventh month at her first pregnancy, the Sîmantonnayana (or parting of the hair.)

2. He causes her after she has bathed and put on a new garment which has not yet been washed, to sit down behind the fire.

3. He sacrifices, while she takes hold of him with the Mahāvyaḥpitis.

4. He cooks a mess of food.

5. According to some (teachers) boiled rice with Mudga beans.

6. The implements used and the Nakṣatra should be of male gender.

7. (He then sacrifices with the following texts) "May Dhātār give to his worshipper further life and safety ; may we obtain the favour of the God whose laws are truthful."

"Dhātār disposes of offspring and wealth ; Dhātār has created this whole world ; Dhātār will give a son to the sacrificer, to Him you shall sacrifice, an offering rich in ghee."

(Besides) with the three verses, Nejaṃeṣa, 'fly away' (Rig-veda Khailika Sūkta, after X, 184,) and in the sixth place the verse, 'Prajāpati' (Rig-veda X, 121,10)

8. (The husband then) parts her hair upwards, beginning from the middle, with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, or with a Darbha needle together with unripe udumbara fruit, with the words, 'Bhūr, Bhuvah, Svah.'

9. He lays down (the thing he has used) in her lap.

10. Ties (the fruits) to a string of three twisted threads and fastens them to her neck with the words, 'Rich in sap is this tree ; like the sappy one be thou fruitful.'

11. (The husband) then says to lute players, 'sing ye the king.'—

12. 'Or if any body else is still more valiant.'

13. Having poured fried grain into a water pot, let him cause her to drink it with the six verses, "May Viṣṇu take care of thy womb." "I call Rākā" (Rigveda X, 184, 1, II. 32, 4-8).

14. Let him then touch her (with the words)

15. 'The winged one art thou, the garuṣmat ; the Trivrit (stoma) is thy head, the Gāyatra thy eye, the metres thy limbs, the Yajus thy name, the Sāman thy body.'

16. Let him cause her to sing merrily,

17. Wearing if she likes, many gold ornaments.

18. A bull is the fee for the sacrifice.

## AŚVALÂYANA G.-S., I. 14.

1. In the 4th month of Pregnancy, the Sîmantonnayana (or parting of the hair, is performed.)

2. In the fortnight of the increasing moon, when the moon stands in conjunction with a Nakṣatra (that has a name) of masculine gender.

3. Then he gives its place to the fire, and having spread to the west of it a bull's hide with the neck to the east, with the hair outside, (he makes oblations) while (his wife) is sitting on that (hide) and takes hold of him, with the two (verses), 'May Dhātri give to his worshipper,' with the two verses, 'I invoke Rākā' (Rig-veda II, 32, 4 seq.) and with (the texts), 'Nejaṃeṣa,' and, 'Prajāpati, no other one than thou' (Rig-veda x, 121, 10.)

4. He then three times parts her hair upwards (i. e., beginning from the front) with a bunch containing an even number of unripe fruits, and with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, and with three bunches of kuśa grass, with (the words), 'Bhur, bhuvah, Savar, Om.'

5. Or four times.

6. He gives orders to two lute-players, 'Sing King Soma.'

7. (They sing) 'May Soma, our King, bless the human race. Settled is the wheel of N. N' (here they name) the river near which they dwell.

8. And whatever aged Brāhmaṇi women, whose husbands and children are alive, tell them, that let them do.

9. A bull is the fee for the sacrifice.

#### PÂRASKARA G.-S., I. 15.

1. Now the Śimantonnayana (or parting of the pregnant wife's hair.)

2. It is performed like the Pūṃsavana ;

3. In her first pregnancy, in the sixth or eighth month.

4. After he has cooked a mess of sacrificial food, containing sisamum and mudga beans and has sacrificed to Prajāpati, he parts for the wife who is seated to the west of the fire on a soft chair, her hair upwards (*i. e.*, beginning from the front) with a bunch containing an even number of unripe Uḍumbara fruits, and with three bunches of Darbha grass, with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, with a stick of Viratara wood, and with a full spindle, with the words, 'Bhur, bhuvah svar.'

5. Or (he parts the hair once) with each of the (three) Mahāvyaḥpitis.

6. He ties (the Uḍumbara fruits, &c.) to a string of three twisted threads with (the words) 'Rich in sap, is this tree ; like the tree, rich in sap, be thou fruitful.'

7. (The husband) then says to two lute-players, 'Sing Ye the King, or if any body else is still more valiant.'

8. Here some also prescribe a certain stanza (to be sung by the lute-players): 'Soma alone is our King. May these human tribes dwell on thy banks, O (river) whose dominion is unbroken, N. N. !, here he names the name of the river near which they dwell.

9. Then (follows) feeding of the Brāhmaṇas.

#### KHADIRA GRĪHYA SŪTRA, II. 2. 24.

Then in the fourth or sixth month (of her pregnancy) the Śimantonnayana (or parting of the hair is performed) for her.

After she has bathed, her husband should put on her a garment that has not yet been washed, and after having sacrificed, he should stand behind her and should part her hair once with a well-proportioned (?) branch of a tree, on which there are fruits (and) with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, with (the verse), 'Rich in sap is this tree (M. B. I. 5., '1).

While she looks at a mess of boiled rice with sesamum seeds, covered with ghee, he should ask her 'What dost thou see ?'

He should make her reply 'Offspring !'

When the child is appearing, the sacrifice for the woman in labor (is to be performed).

With the two verses 'She who athward'—(M. B. I, 5, 6, seq.)

He should give a name to the child, N. N. !

That (is his) secret (name).

Before the navel string is cut off and the breast is given (to the child ; the father) should have rice and barley grains pounded in the way prescribed for the Nyagrodha—shoot.

He should take thereof with his (right) thumb and fourth finger and give it to the child to eat, with (the mantra), 'This order' (M. B. I, 5, 8).

And butter with (the verse), 'May intelligence to thee' (M. B. I, 5, 9).

## SIMANTAKARANA. GRIHYA-SŪTRA OF GOBHILA.

### II Prapāṭhaka Kāndikā 7.

1. Now (follows) the Sīmantakarana (or parting of the hair) in her first pregnancy.
2. In the fourth, or sixth, or eighth month (of her pregnancy).
3. In the morning after she has been washed, sitting on northward-pointed Darbha grass, (all over her body), including her head, she sits down to the west of the fire on northward-pointed Darbha grass, facing the east.
4. Her husband standing behind her, ties (to her neck) an Uḷumbara branch with an even number of unripe fruits on it, with (the verse) 'Rich in sap is this tree'. (M. B. I. 5, 1)
5. He then parts her hair upwards (i.e., beginning from the front), the first time with Darbha blades, with (the word) 'Bhuḥ! the second time with (the word) 'Bhuvah,' the third time with the word Svah':—
6. Then with (a splint of) Viratara (wood) with this verse, 'With which Aditis' (*Ibid*, 2).
7. Then with a full spindle, with this verse, 'I invoke Rākā' (*Ibid*, 3—4);
8. And with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, with (the verse), 'Which are thy blessings, O Rākā' (*Ibid*, 5).
9. (There should be prepared) a mess of boiled rice with sesamum seeds, covered with ghee; at that he should make her look.
10. Let him say to her, 'What dost thou see?' and make her answer, 'Offspring!'
11. That (food) she should eat herself.
12. Brāhmaṇa woman should sit by her side, pronouncing auspicious words (such as), 'A mother of valiant sons! A mother of living sons! A living husband's wife!'
13. Now (follows) the sacrifice for the woman in labour.
14. When the child is appearing, he strews (Darbha grass) round the fire and sacrifices, two Ājya oblations with this verse, 'She who athwart.' (M. B. I. 5. 6.) and with (the verse) 'Vipaskit has taken away.' (*Ibid*, 7).
15. 'A male he will be born, N. N. by name.'—(in this passage of the last verse) he pronounces a name.
16. What that (name is) is kept secret.
17. Whence they announce to him that a son has been born, he should say 'Delay still cutting off the navel-string, and giving him the breast.'
18. Let him have rice and barley-grains pounded in the same way as the (Nyagrodha) shoot.
19. Seizing (the pounded substance) with the thumb and fourth finger of his right hand, he smears it on the tongue of the boy, with the formula, 'This order.' (M. B. I. 5. 8.).
20. In the same way the production of intelligence (is performed). He should give to eat (to the child) clarified butter.
21. Or he takes it with gold, i. e., with a golden spoon) and sacrifices it on the face of the boy with this verse, 'May Mitra and Varuṇa bestow intelligence on thee (M. B. I. 5. 9.) and with (the verse) 'The lord of the seat, the wonderful.' (Sāma-Veda, I. 171).
22. Let him say 'Cut off the navel string,' and 'Give the breast (to the child).'
23. From that time let him not touch (his wife) until ten nights have passed. (S. B. E. Vol. XXX, Part II, translated by Hermann Oldenberg.)

### GRIHYA-SŪTRA OF HIRANNYAKESIN.

#### Prajna II, Patala I, Section I.

1. Now (follows) the Sīmantonnayana (or parting of the pregnant wife's hair).
2. In the fourth month of her first pregnancy, in the fortnight of the increasing moon, under an auspicious constellation, he puts wood on the fire, performs the rites

down to the Vyâhṛiti oblations, and makes four oblations to Dhâtri with (the verse), "May Dhâtri give us wealth" [and the following three verses, (Taitt. Samh. III, 3, 11. 2. 3)].

3. 'This, O Varuṇa' (&c., Sec. I, Chap. 27, Sûtra 2 down to ); "Hail! Good luck!"

He then makes the wife who has taken a bath, who wears a clean dress and ornaments, and has spoken with a Brâhmana, sit down to the west of the fire, facing the east, in a round apartment. Standing to the east (of the wife) facing the west, he parts her hair upward (i. e., beginning from the front) with porcupine's quill that has three white spots, holding (also) a bunch of unripe fruits, with the Vyâhṛitis (and) with the two (verses), "I invoke Râkâ," (and), "Thy graces, O Râkâ." (Taitt. Samh. III, 3, 11, 5). Then he recites over (his wife the formulas) "Soma alone is our king, thus say the Brâhmana tribes, sitting near thy banks, O Gaṅgâ, whose wheel does not roll back (?)!" (and), "May we find our way with thee through all hostile powers, as through streams of water" (above I, 20, 5).

### GRIHYA-SÛTRA OF ÂPASTAMBA.

#### *Patal 6, Section 14.*

1. The Sîmantonnayana (or parting of the pregnant wife's hair, is performed) in her first pregnancy, in the fourth month.

2. (The husband) serves food to Brâhmanas and causes them to pronounce auspicious wishes; then after (the ceremonies) from the putting (of wood) on the fire, down to the Âjyabhâga oblations (have been performed), he offers the oblations (indicated in the) next (mantras, M. II, 11, 1-8), while (the wife) takes hold of him and enters upon the (performance) of the *Jaya* and following oblations.

3. Having performed (the rites) down to the sprinkling (of water) round (the fire), he makes her sit down to the west of the fire, facing the east, and parts her hair upwards (i. e., beginning from the front) with a porcupine's quill that has three white spots, with three Darbha blades, and with a bunch of unripe Uḍumbara fruits, with the Vyâhṛitis or with the two next (verses, II 11, 9, 10).

4. He says to two lute players, 'Sing.'

5. Of the next two (verses II, 11, 11, 12), the first (is to be sung on this occasion) among the (people of the) Sâlvas.

6. The second (is to be used) for Brâhmanas; and the river near which they dwell, is to be named.

7. He ties barley-grains with young shoots (to the head of the wife); these she keeps until the stars appear.

8. When the stars have appeared, he goes (with his wife) toward the east or north, touches a calf, and murmurs the Vyâhṛitis; then she breaks her silence.

### THE FIRST LEARNING OF THE ALPHABET.

Now we shall say something about the commencement of study and the first learning of alphabets. The Mârkaṇḍeya quoted in Mâdhavîyam :—

"When the child has attained the fifth year, and when Hari is not asleep, avoiding the sixth and the first day of the moon, the Riktâ, and the fifteenth as well, the Sunday and the Tuesday: let him make the child commence his first study in a well-ascertained, auspicious time. Spreading a white cloth, on which are heaps of rice, let him write on those heaps the fifty letters, in their due order, with a golden stylus. Let him worship with the Vyâhṛitis Bhuḥ, &c., the presiding deities of letters as well as Sarasvatî, Ganeṣa, Hari, Lakṣmî, Guru, the sun, the author of the Grihya-Sûtra to which he belongs, his own branch of learning, Śiva, and the six letters. Let him offer Homa in fire with ghee, reciting the names of these and with Naivedya of Guḍa, Laḍḍoo, &c. (sweetmeats) separately. The Brâhmanas should be honored with fee. The teacher should sit facing east and the boy facing west. First should be recited the six-syllable Mantra :—"Om ! Namaḥ Śivâya ;"

and the child should be taught the fifty letters beginning with अ and ending with व॥ Then making the child sit facing east, cause him to write three times and speak out the letters. Let him cease reading on the days which are holidays, namely the eighth and the second days of the moon, and the full and the new moon days, &c.

#### THE RITUAL.

*Saṅkalpa*.—I, NN, on such and such day, &c., am going to make the child commence the learning of the alphabet, so that he may become master of all sciences, and so attain the four-fold end of man.

*Mātrikā Pujā*.—Then let him perform *Mātrikā Pujā*, and *Ābhyudayika Śrāddha*, make the *Brāhmaṇas* recite the auspicious day, &c., spread out a white cloth and place small heaps of rice on it, and on such heaps let him do puja to Gaṇeśa, Hari, Lakṣmī, Devī, Sarasvatī, Vyāsa, Gautama, Jaiminī, Manu, Pāṇini, Kātyāyana, Patañjali, Yāska, Piṅgala, Garga, Kaṇāḍa, Kapila, Vālmīki, Vāmana, Dhanyantari, Kṛiśāśva, Bharata, Viśvakarman, Pāṇikāpyā, and Nakula ; as well as the Vedas, the Purāṇas, the Nyāya, the Mīmāṃsā, the Dharma-Sāstra, Phonetics, Ritual, Grammar, the Nirukta, Prosody, Astronomy, the Vaiśeṣika, the Vedānta, the Sāṅkhya, the Pātañjala, Poetry, Rhetoric, Medicine, Archery, Music, the Arts, the Science of elephants, the Science of horses, the Science of falcons. He should invoke these in the vocative case with the mantras of their names. The invocation of Sarasvatī is somewhat different. Her Mantra is : “O mother of the world ! O whose form is all-speech ! Come here in thy all-speech form. Come hither.” Then salute all these in the dative case, beginning with Om and ending with namaḥ. (As, Om Gaṇeśāya namaḥ ; Om Haraye namaḥ, &c.) and offer them each the *Upachāras*, such as, pādya (water to wash the feet), arghya, āchamanīya, sandal, flowers, rice, incense, candle sweet-pudding, &c. Then give one homa to each with ghee in the fire. Then give cloth and ornaments to the teacher and feast the *Brāhmaṇas*, and the nurse. Then anointing the boy and giving him a bath and dressing him in new garments, adorned with scents and ornaments, make him go and perambulate thrice the devas like Gaṇeśa, &c., and the teacher, and let him sit facing west. Then let him salute the Guru reciting :—

अज्ञानतिमिरान्धस्य ज्ञानाञ्जनशलाकया ।

चक्षुस्त्वमीलितं येन तस्मै श्रीगुरवे नमः ॥ २ ॥

Ajñāna timirāndhasya Jñānāñjana śalākayā.

Chakṣuruntmilitam yena Tasmai śrigurave namaḥ.

Salutations to that glorious Guru who, when my sight was blinded by the darkness of ignorance, restored to it the light of knowledge and truth.

Then let him salute Sarasvatī, saying :—

सस्त्विति नमस्तुभ्यं वरदे कामरूपिणि ।

विश्वरूपे विशालाक्षि देहि विद्याम् सुरेश्वरि ॥

“Salutations to thee, O Sarasvatī ! O boon-giver ! O all-desired ! O thou of many forms ! O thou of broad eyes ! Give me knowledge, O lady of all devas !”

Making the boy recite the above two verses, and causing the *Brāhmaṇas* and the teacher to bless him, make him learn the letters : and commence study. Then bid farewell to the teacher and the devas. Let fee be given to all. Then establish fire and offer sacrifice to it. (The details are omitted).

**मिताक्षरा—एतेषां नित्यत्वेऽप्यानुष्ठिकं फलमाह,**

*Mitâksarâ*—Though these ceremonies are nitya or permanent (producing chiefly spiritual benefits) the author now shows their secondary benefits or fruits also.

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 13.

**एवमेनः शमं याति बीजगर्भसमुद्भवम् ।**

**तूष्णीमेताः क्रियाः स्त्रीणां विवाहस्तु समन्त्रकः ॥ १३ ॥**

एवं Evam, thus, in this manner, by performing these ceremonies. एनः Enah, sin. शमं Śamam, destruction, tranquillity or peace. याति Yāti, goes to. बीजगर्भसमुद्भवम् Bijāgarbhasamudbhavam, produced from the seed and the womb (ovum): due to the sperm and germ cells. तूष्णीं Tūṣṇīm, silently. एताः Etāḥ, these. क्रियाः Kriyāḥ, rites. स्त्रीणाम् Strīṇām, of women, for women. विवाहः Vivāhaḥ, marriage. तु Tu, however, (is performed). समन्त्रकः Samantrakah, with mantras.

13. By this the taint (derived from both parents, literally) produced from the seed and the embryo is destroyed. These ceremonies, in cases of women, are (to be) performed in silence, but however their marriage is with (the recitation of) Mantra.—13.

**मिताक्षरा ॥**

‘एवम्’ उक्तेन प्रकारेण गर्भाधानादिभिः संस्कारकर्मभिः कृतैः ‘एनः’ पापं शमं याति । किंभूतम् ‘बीजगर्भसमुद्भवं’ शुक्रशोणितसंबद्धं गात्रव्याधिसंक्रान्तिनिमित्तं न तु पतितोत्पन्नत्वादि । स्त्रीणां विशेषमाह । ‘एता’ जातकर्मादिक्रियाः स्त्रीणां ‘तूष्णीं’ विनैव मन्त्रैर्यथाकालं कार्याः । विवाहः पुनः समन्त्रकः ॥ १३ ॥

MITÂKSARÂ.

“By this,” *i. e.*, the said method, *i. e.*, by the performance of the consecratory ceremonies of Garbhâdhâna, &c.

“The taint” or the sin, is destroyed. What kind of taint? Produced from seed and embryo, and relating to semen and ovum, and occasioned by the contagion of some bodily or hereditary disease and not the sin of being born of an outcaste, &c.

The author propounds a special rule for women. “These,” the ceremonies of birth, &c., of women are to be performed, at the proper time, “in silence,” without reciting sacred formulas. Their marriage, (however), again is (performed) with the Mantras, *i. e.*, by reciting the sacred formulas.

BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The word garbha means the uterine blood, *i. e.*, the ovum. These ceremonies are useful especially in destroying any defect of hereditary disease. Instead of the words gâtra

vyādhi another reading is gotra vyādhi, i. e., any disease belonging to heredity. These ceremonies in the case of women are also to be performed in the proper time. The word tu तु of the verse means "again."

*The Upanayana.*

[The author now mentions the time of Upanayana.]

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 14.

गर्भाष्टमेऽष्टमे वाऽब्दे ब्राह्मणस्योपनायनम् ।  
राज्ञामेकादशे सैके विशामेके यथाकुलम् ॥ १४ ॥

गर्भाष्टमे Garbhāṣṭame, in the eighth year from the time of conception or garbhādhāna ceremony. अष्टमे Aṣṭame, in the eighth. वा Vā, or. अब्दे Abde, year. ब्राह्मणस्य Brāhmaṇasya, of the Brāhmaṇa. उपनायनम् Upanāyanam, the Upanayana ceremony. राज्ञां Rājñam, of the Kṣatriyās. एकादशे Ekādaśe, in the eleventh. सैके Saike, ( स + एके ) with one (eleven) i. e., twelfth. विशाम् Viśām, of Vaiśyas. एके Eke, some. यथाकुलम् Yathākulam, according to family custom.

14. In the eighth year of conception or in the eighth (year of) birth, the Upanayana ceremony of the Brāhmaṇas, of the Kṣatriyas in the eleventh ; of the Vaiśyas in eleven plus one. Some say according to family custom.—14.

*मिताक्षरा ॥*

गर्भाधानमवधिं कृत्वा जन्मतो वाऽष्टमे वर्षे ब्राह्मणस्य 'उपनायनम्' उपनयनमेवोपनायनं स्वार्थे अण् । वृत्तानुसारात् । आर्षे वा दीर्घत्वम् । अत्रेच्छया विकल्पः । राज्ञामेकादशे । वैश्यस्य 'सैके एकादशे, द्वादशे इत्यर्थः । गर्भग्रहणं सर्वत्रानुवर्तते । समासे गुणभूतस्यापि गर्भशब्दस्य बुद्ध्या विभज्योभयत्राप्यनुवर्तनं कार्यम् ।

गर्भादेकादशे राज्ञो गर्भाद्धि द्वादशे विशः ।

इति स्मृत्यन्तरवचनात् । यथा "अथ शब्दानुशासनं केषां शब्दानां लौकिकानां वैदिकानाम्" इति । अत्रापि कार्यमित्यनुवर्तते । कुलस्थित्या केचिदुपनयनमिच्छन्ति ॥ १४ ॥

*MITĀKṢARĀ.*

Calculating either from the starting point of the day of the conception ceremony (garbhādhāna) or from that of birth, in the eighth year, the Upanayana of the Brāhmaṇa should be performed. The forms Upanayana and Upanāyana are the same. The affix अण् added to उपनयन does not cause any change of sense. Or the lengthening of अ into आ is an archaic form due to the exigencies of metre.

Here the (selection of any one of the two) alternatives depends on one's wish, (i. e., one may perform the ceremony in either of the two years as he wishes).

Of the Kṣatriyas, in the eleventh. Of the Vaiśyas, *plus one*, i. e., add 1 to 11, i. e., in the twelfth year.

The word "conception" is understood after all these. Though the word "conception," occurring in a compound (in the original) is an adjective or secondary word and consequently grammatically incapable of separation from the word it qualifies (namely, from the word aṣṭama or eighth), yet it must be logically considered to have been so separated and should be applied to the other two words too (the eleventh and the twelfth). Because of the text in another Smṛiti (Manu) "Of a Kṣatriya in the eleventh year after conception, of a Vaiśya in the twelfth." (Manu, Ch. II, V. 36). For example, in the sentence atha śabdânuśâsanam, "Now an exposition of words." "Of what words? Of the profane and sacred words." Here also the compound term "Exposition-of-words" has been broken up and the term, शब्द word, has been added to the words, profane and the sacred.

In this verse also the words "must be performed" are taken to be understood.

Some want to perform the Upanayana ceremony according to family custom.

#### BÂLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

As it is impossible to know when the conception really takes place, so the commentator uses the word "Garbhâdhâna," which is a fixed period of time to calculate the starting point. Another reading is "janmataḥ" instead of "janmanah." Thus in the Nâradiya Saṃhitâ:—"In the eighth year from Garbhâdhâna or in the eighth year from birth (janmataḥ) should be performed the ceremony of tying the sacred girdle of the Brâhmaṇa, of the Kṣatriyas, in the eleventh year, of the Vaiśyas, in the twelfth."

The word in the verse is "Upanâyanam" with a long आ ā; the usual form is "Upanayana" with a short अ a: a third form is found in Manu, according to Medhatithi's reading, namely, "Aupanâyanam औपनायनम्" "with the Vṛiddhi of उ and the lengthening of आ॥ Both Upanâyana and Aupanâyana are variants of the one and the same word upanayana. See Manu (II. 36).

Though it is optional to count either from the day of Garbhâdhâna rite or from the day of birth, yet the first is more praiseworthy as it is the principal; the other is secondary.

#### *The duties of Guru.*

#### YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 15.

उपनीय गुरुः शिष्यं महाव्याहृतिपूर्वकम् ।

वेदमध्यापयेदेनं शौचाचारांश्च शिष्येत् ॥ १५ ॥

उपनीय Upaniya, after the Upanayana ceremony; having initiated, (according to one's own Gṛihya rite). गुरुः Guruḥ, the preceptor. शिष्यम् Śiṣyam, the student, the pupil. महाव्याहृतिपूर्वकम् Mahāvyaḥṛitipūrvakam, preceded by the great Vyāhṛiti texts: namely, Bhuh. &c. वेदम् Vedaṃ, the Veda.



should teach, is to be taught. एनम् Enam, him, the student. शौचाचारान् Śauchâ-charân, the purificatory rites च Cha, and, moreover. शिक्षयेन् Śikṣayet, should teach.

15. The Guru having initiated the pupil, should instruct him the Vedas together with the great Vyâhritis, and must teach him the purificatory practices.—15.

### मिताक्षरा ॥

स्वगृह्योक्तविधिना उपनीय शिष्यं गुरुः महाव्याहृतिपूर्वकं वेदमध्यापयेत् । महाव्याहृतयश्च भूरादिसत्यान्ताः सप्त, पञ्च वा गौतमाभिप्रायेण । किञ्च शौचाचारान् वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणान् शिक्षयेत् । उपनीय शौचाचारांश्च शिक्षयेदित्यनेन प्रागुपनयनात्कामचारो दर्शितः वर्णधर्मान्वर्जयित्वा । स्त्रोणामप्येतत्समानं विवाहादर्वाक् । उपनयनस्थानीयत्वाद्विवाहस्य ॥ १५ ॥

### MITÂKṢARĀ.

To the pupil initiated in accordance with the rules laid down in one's own Gṛihya-Sûtra, the preceptor must teach the Vedas, preceded by the great Vyâhritis. The Mahâvyâhritis are seven beginning with Bhuḥ and ending with Satya, or according to the opinion of Gautama, they are five. Moreover he ought to teach him the purificatory rites to be mentioned below.

From the text "being initiated, let him be taught the purificatory practices" it is inferentially declared that before Upanayana one may act as he likes. Excepting the (special) duties of (special) castes. This (acting as one likes, &c.) is common even to women before they are married. For marriage stands to them in the place of Upanayana.

### BÂLAMABHATTA'S GLOSS.

The Upanayana should be performed according to the particular Gṛihya-Sûtra rules, by which the family is governed. It is blameable, if performed by other rite. Hence, the commentator says "according to the rites taught in one's own Gṛihya-Sûtra."

The seven Vyâhritis are Bhuḥ, Bhuvah, Svah or Suvah, Mahah, Janah, Tapah, and Satyam. According to Gautama, the five Vyâhritis are : Oṃ Bhuḥ, Oṃ Bhuvah, Oṃ Svah, Oṃ Puruṣah, Oṃ Satyam.

As says Gautama :—"Before Upanayana the child is free to act as he likes, speak as he likes and eat as he likes." By "act as he likes" is meant that his movements depend on his wish only. By "speak as he likes" is meant that he may utter obscene words, &c., (without incurring sin). By 'eating as he likes' is meant that he may eat stale food, or garlic, onions, &c.

But he must not transgress the particular rules of his caste, for he is a Brâhmana, &c., even before initiation. Therefore he must not commit a mortal sin (Mahâpâtaka).

Even if he touches a chaṇḍâla, &c., he need not bathe with his clothes on, &c. If he touches water unbathed that water does not become impure. After six years of age, however, he also should bathe,

Also to that effect says Manu (II. 171):—They call the teacher (the pupil's) father because he gives the Veda ; for nobody can perform a (sacred) rite before the investiture with the girdle of munja grass.

If a child before being initiated into reading and writing, loses his father, he can perform the funeral of his father and can utter the sacred "Svadhâ."

A female child has the same liberty as the uninitiated boy, so long as she is not married. Compare Manu II. 69.

### मिताक्षरा ॥ शौचाचारानाह

[The author now explains the purificatory practices.]

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 16.

**दिवा सन्ध्यासु कर्णस्थब्रह्मसूत्र उदङ्मुखः ।**

**कुर्यान्मूत्रपुरीषे च रात्रौ चेदक्षिणामुखः ॥ १६ ॥**

दिवा Divā, in the day time. सन्ध्यासु Sandhyāsu, in the morning and evening twilights. कर्णस्थ ब्रह्मसूत्रः Kārṇastha Brahmasūtraḥ, with the sacred thread on the ear. उदङ्मुखः Udaṅmukhaḥ, facing the north. कुर्यात् Kuryāt, he should perform. मूत्रपुरीषे Mūtrapuriṣe, urine and fæces च Cha, and (indicates the place where there are no ashes.) रात्रौ Rātrāu, at night. चेत् Chet, but. दक्षिणामुखः Dakṣiṇā-mukhaḥ, facing the south.

16. Let him, placing the sacred thread on the right ear, void urine and fæces, facing the north, during the day time and the twilights; and facing south during the night.—16.

### मिताक्षरा ॥

कर्णस्थं ब्रह्मसूत्रं यस्य तथोक्तः । कर्णश्च दक्षिणः ।

पवित्रं दक्षिणे कर्णे कृत्वा विष्णुमूत्रमुत्सृजेत् ।

इति लिङ्गात् असौ अहनि संन्ययोश्च उदङ्मुखो मूत्रपुरीषे कुर्यात् । चकाराद्भस्मादिरहिते देशे । रात्रौ तु दक्षिणामुखः ॥ १६ ॥

### MITĀKṢARĀ.

He who has placed the sacred thread on the ear is being spoken of as kārṇastha-brahma-sūtrah. The ear means the right ear. Because it is said: "Having placed the sacred thread on the right ear, let him void urine and fæces."

He should void urine and fæces during the day time and the two twilights facing the north. By the word "cha' (and) in the text, is meant a place free from ashes, etc. During the night, however, he should face the south.

### BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Says Marīṇi: "He who eats or voids urine or excrements without the sacred thread is purified by Prāṇāyāma (regulation of breath) with eight thousand Gāyatrī."

The word *divā-sandhyāsu* is a Dvandva, compound of *diva*+*sandhyā* (the day time and two twilights). The word 'cha' in the second line of the verse is not redundant. It serves to include all other rules, such as, the place must be free from ashes, &c. See Manu (V. 136.)

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 17.

गृहीतशिश्रश्चोत्थाय मृद्भिरभ्युद्धृतैर्जलैः ।  
गन्धलेपक्षयकरं शौचं कुर्यादतन्द्रितः ॥ १७ ॥

गृहीतशिश्रः *Gṛihita śiśrah*, holding the organ. च *Cha*, and उत्थाय *Uttāya*, rising up. मृद्भिः *Mṛiddbhiḥ*, with earth अभ्युद्धृतैः *Abhyuddhṛitaiḥ*, with uplifted. जलैः *Jalaiḥ*, with waters. गन्धलेपक्षयकरं *Gandhalepa-kṣayakaram*, destructive of stink sticking to the body. शौचं *Saucham*, purification. कुर्यात् *Kuryât*, let him make. अतन्द्रितः *Atandṛitaḥ*, attentively.

17. Moreover rising with the organ in one hand, purification, sufficient to remove the stink sticking to the body, is to be attentively made, with earth and uplifted water.—17.

मिताक्षरा ॥

किंच अनन्तरं शिश्रं गृहीत्वा उत्थाय उद्धृताभिरद्भिर्वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणाभिर्मृद्भिश्च गन्धलेपयोः क्षयकरं शौचं कुर्यात् । अतन्द्रितः अनलसः । उद्धृताभिरिति जलान्तः शौचनिषेधः । अत्र गन्धलेपक्षयकरमिति सर्वाश्रमिणां साधारणं शौचमिदम् । मृत्संख्यानियमस्त्वदृष्टार्थः ॥ १७ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

Moreover afterwards taking hold of the organ, he should rise and perform the ablution, in order to destroy the stink and remove the fecal matter sticking to the body, with uplifted waters, which would be described further on, and with earth. "Attentively" means without idleness.

By the use of the word "uplifted," purification within the waters is prohibited.

"Destructive of stink and sticking" is the rule of purification in general for all the âśramas (orders).

The rule relating to the number of times earth should be used is for the purpose of producing invisible result.

BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

"Afterwards" means after voiding these. The word "*Gṛihītaśiśna*" is a Bahuvrīhi compound, meaning 'he who has taken hold of the organ.'

*The compulsory âchamana.*

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 18.

**अन्तर्जानुः शुचौ देश उपाविष्ट उदङ्मुखः ।**

**प्राग्वा ब्राह्मेण तीर्थेन द्विजो नित्यमुपस्पृशेत् ॥ १८ ॥**

**अन्तर्जानुः** Antarjānuḥ, with the hands between the knees. **शुचौ** Śuchau, in a clean. **देशे** Deśe, spot. **उपाविष्टः** Upaviṣṭaḥ, seated, sitting. **उदङ्मुखः** Udaṅmu-  
khaḥ, facing the north. **प्राक्** Prak, facing the east. **वा** Vā, or. **ब्राह्मेण** Brāhme-  
ṇa, with Brahma. **तीर्थेन** Tīrthena, with the tirtha. **द्विजः** Dvijah, the twice-born. **नित्यं** Nityam, daily, always. **उपस्पृशेत्** Upaśpriṣet, should sip the water. This sipping of water refers to the performance of âchamana purification.

18. With hands between the knees, in a clean spot, being seated facing the north or the east, a twice-born ought daily to perform âchamana by sipping water, through the Brahma-tirtha (Brahma-ford)—18.

**मिताक्षरा ॥**

**शुचौ अशुचिद्रव्यासंस्पृष्टे । देशे इत्युपादानादुपानच्छयनासनादिनिषेधः । 'उपाविष्टः'**  
**न स्थितः न शयानः प्रहो गच्छन्वा । उदङ्मुखः प्राङ्मुखो वेति दिगन्तरनिवृत्तिः ।**  
**शुचौ देश इत्येतस्मात्पादक्षालनप्राप्तिः । 'ब्राह्मेण तीर्थेन' वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणेन । 'द्विजो'**  
**न शूद्रादिः । 'नित्यं' सर्वकालम् । आश्रमान्तरगतोऽपि 'उपस्पृशेत्' आचामेत् ।**  
**कथम् 'अन्तर्जानुः' जानुनेर्मध्ये हस्तौ कृत्वा दक्षिणेन हस्तेनेति ॥ १८ ॥**

MITĀKṢARĀ.

"Clean"—without being defiled by the contact of impure objects. The expression "clean spot" by implication prohibits shoes, beds, stools, &c. "Being seated" neither standing, nor lying down, nor being bent forward, nor walking. "Facing the north or the east" excludes all other directions. "In a clean spot" indicates that the feet also should be washed. "Through the Brahma-ford." This will be described later on. "The twice-born," not the Śūdras and others. "Daily," at all times, though he may have entered another order (than that of studentship). "Let him rinse the mouth," let him make âchamana. How? "Between the knees," having placed the hands between the knees, and with the right hand performing the âchamana.

BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The 'pure spot' necessary for this ordinary âchamana need not be the spot swept and cleansed, &c., or sanctified otherwise. It only means a spot not unclean by reason of contact with unclean substances like shoes. The word "âsana" used in the commentary refers to the ordinary seats of daily use, and not sacred seats.

According to Hārīta, one may sit facing the Īśāna-corner. This āchamana is compulsory in all stages of life and for all orders. Sitting with knees up and the two hands between the knees, the right should be in the palm of the right hand and sipped through the Brāhma-tīrtha.

[Now the author describes the fords or the tīrthas.]

Y. JNAVALKYA'S VERSE 19.

मिताक्षरा ॥ तीर्थान्याह ।

कनिष्ठादेशिन्यङ्गुष्ठमूलान्यग्रं करस्य च ।

प्रजापतिपितृब्रह्मदेवतीर्थान्यनुक्रमात् ॥ १९ ॥

कनिष्ठा (मूलं) Kaṇiṣṭhā (mulām), the beginning of the little finger. देशिनी (मूलं) Deśini (mulam), the beginning of the index finger. अङ्गुष्ठ-मूलानि Aṅguṣṭha (mūlāni), the beginning of the great finger. अग्रं (Agram), the end. करस्य Karasya, of the hand. च Cha, and. प्रजापति (तीर्थं) Prajāpati (tīrtha), the Prajāpati tīrtha. पितृ (तीर्थं) Pitṛi (tīrtha), the Pitṛi-tīrtha. ब्रह्म (तीर्थं) Brahma (tīrtha), the Brahma-tīrtha. देव तीर्थानि Deva tīrthāni, the deva-tīrtha. अनुक्रमात् Anukramāt, respectively.

19. The beginning of the little finger is the Prajāpati tīrtha, that of the index-finger is the pitṛi-tīrtha, that of the great finger (or thumb) is the Brahma-tīrtha, and the end of the hand is the deva-tīrtha.—19.

मिताक्षरा ॥

कनिष्ठायास्तर्जन्या अङ्गुष्ठस्य च मूलानि करस्याग्रं च प्रजापतिपितृब्रह्मदेवतीर्थानि यथाक्रमं वेदितव्यानि ॥ १९ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

The roots of the little finger, of the index-finger and of the thumb, and the end of the hand are respectively known as the Prajāpati, Brahma and the Deva tīrthas.

BĀLAMBHATĀ'S GLOSS.

Compare Manu II. 58 and 59.

Let a Brāhmaṇa always sip water out of the part of hand (tīrtha) sacred to Brāhmaṇ, or out of that sacred to Kā (Prajāpati) or out of (that) sacred to the gods, never out of that, sacred to the manes.

They call (the part) at the root of the thumb the tīrtha sacred to Brāhmaṇ, that at the root of the (little) finger (the tīrtha) sacred to Kā (Prajāpati), (that) at the tips (of fingers, the tīrtha) sacred to the gods, and that below (between the index and the thumb, the tīrtha) sacred to the manes.

According to some, there is option as to the sipping of water from any one of these three tīrthas. For example, if owing to boil or ulcer the Brahma tīrtha is incapable of being used then the Prajāpati or the Deva tīrtha may be employed in āchamana. If all the tīrthas are unfit, then the water may be sipped from a spoon as ordained. If one cannot do it himself, another may help him in giving the water, i. e., by pouring it into his mouth.

[Now the method of Âchamana is described.]

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 20.

त्रिः प्राश्यापो द्विरुन्मृज्य खान्यद्भिः समुपस्पृशेत् ।  
अद्भिस्तु प्रकृतिस्थाभिर्हीनाभिः फेनबुद्बुदैः ॥ २० ॥

त्रिः Triḥ, thrice. प्राश्य Prāśya, having drunk. आपः Āpaḥ, water. द्विः Dviḥ, twice. उन्मृज्य Unmrija, having cleared. खानि Khāni, the holes (*i. e.*, nose, ears, eyes). अद्भिः Adbhiḥ, with waters which are pure and free from mixtures. समुपस्पृशेत् Samupasprīṣet, should be touched. अद्भिः Adbhiḥ, with waters. तु Tu, but which comes from प्रकृतिस्थाभिः Prakṛitiṣṭhābhiḥ, in the natural pure state. हीनाभिः Hīnābhiḥ, free from. फेन बुद्बुदैः Phena-budbudaiḥ, froth and bubbles.

20. Water should be thrice drunk, the mouth should be twice rubbed, the holes should be touched with water (once). The waters should also be in the natural pure state, free from froth and bubbles.—20.

मिताक्षरा ॥

वारत्रयमपः पीत्वा मुखमंगुष्ठमूलेन द्विरुन्मृज्य 'खानि' छिद्राणि ऊर्ध्वकायगतानि द्राणादीनि अद्भिरुपस्पृशेत् । अद्भिर्द्रव्यान्तरासंसृष्टाभिः । पुनरद्भिरित्यब्रह्मणं प्रति-  
च्छिद्रमुदकस्पर्शनार्थम् । पुनस्ता एव विशिनष्टि । 'प्रकृतिस्थाभिः' गन्धरूपरसस्पर्शान्तर-  
मप्राप्ताभिः फेनबुद्धदरहिताभिः । तुशब्दाद्वर्षधारागतानां शूद्राद्यावर्जितानां च निषेधः  
॥ २० ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

Having drunk water three times, the mouth (lips) should be twice rubbed with the root of the thumb; he should then touch with water, the "holes" or the cavities in the upper portion of the body, such as nostrils, &c., "with water," *i. e.*, with pure water unmingled with any other thing. By mentioning the word "water" twice, it is meant that every cavity should be touched with water.

The author further qualifies such waters, by saying "in the natural state," that have not undergone any modification in smell, colour, taste or such, and are free from froth and bubbles.

By using the word "tu," "also," there is the prohibition of the waters brought by the Śūdras and of the rain-water.

BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The seven upper cavities should be touched with water: and not the lower ones, nor the navel. The âchamana water is thus described in another text:—"Let him sip that water which has been taken out (of a tank, well, river, &c.) which is free from froth

and bubbles, and which has not been heated by fire." Yama says: "The twice-born who sips the water in which hand or fingers have been placed, drinks wine (commits the sin of drinking wine)." Prachetas says: "Let him sip thrice or four times the water which is not hot, which is not frothy, which is pure to eye, (or strained through a cloth), and which reaches up to the heart." The general rule is to sip *thrice*; to sip *four* times is optional. The sick, however, according to Yama, may use warm water.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 21.

हृत्कण्ठतालुगाभिस्तु यथासंख्यं द्विजातयः ।

शुद्धयेरन्त्री च शूद्रश्च सकृत्स्पृष्टाभिरन्ततः ॥ २१ ॥

हृत्-(गाभिः) Hṛit (gābhiḥ), reaching the heart. कण्ठ-(गाभिः) Kaṇṭha (gābhiḥ), reaching the throat. तालुगाभिः Talugābhiḥ, reaching the palate. तु Tu, but. यथासंख्यं Yathāsankhyam, respectively. द्विजातयः Dvijātayaḥ, twice-born (Brāhmaṇa, Kṣatriya, and Vaiśya). शुद्धयेरन्त्री Śuddhyeran, become pure. स्त्री Strī, a woman. च Cha, and. शूद्रः Śūdraḥ, a Śūdra. च Cha, and (here indicates the uninitiated twice-born are ranked along with women and Śūdras). सकृत् Sakṛit, once. स्पृष्टाभिः Spṛiṣṭābhiḥ, by being touched. अन्ततः Antataḥ, by the last, *i. e.*, by the last in the above enumeration of heart, throat and palate, therefore by reaching the palate: for palate is the last in the above list. Or the word antataḥ may mean "the inner part of the mouth," namely, the palate. Then the force of the affix taḥ will be that of the locative. Medhātithi explains it by the root of the tongue. Hemādri says it means approaching the palate, *i. e.*, entering the teeth.

21. The twice-born become pure by waters reaching the heart, the throat and the palate, respectively. Women and Śūdras become pure directly the waters once reach the palate.—21.

मिताक्षरा ॥

हृत्कण्ठतालुगाभिरद्विर्यथाक्रमेण द्विजातया शुद्ध्यन्ति । स्त्री च शूद्रश्च 'अन्ततः' अन्तेन तालुना स्पृष्टाभिरपि । सकृदिति वैश्याद्विशेषः । च शब्दादनुपनोतोऽपि ॥ २१ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

The twice-born classes are purified by waters respectively reaching the heart, the throat and the palate. The women and the Śūdras are purified when waters touch the last of these, namely, the palate.

"Once" is used to distinguish the Śūdras and women from the Vaiśyas (who sip thrice; their waters also reach the end of the palate). By the word "cha" in the text the uninitiated persons are also included.

BĀLAMBHATṬA'S GLOSS.

Manu lays down the following (II. 62) :—

"A Brāhmaṇa is purified by water that reaches his heart, a Kṣatriya by reaching his throat, a Vaiśya by water taken into his mouth, (and) a Śūdra by water touched with the extremity (of his lips)." The word antataḥ has been differently explained.

According to Kalpataru, the Śūdra should also *drink* water but only once. But Śrīdatta holds that he should only *touch* the water with the extremity (antaḥ) of the lips and not drink it.

The following rules are laid down in Agastya Samhitâ, Gautama Tantra etc :—

“The twice-born should first wash his hands and feet, tie the top lock, and then perform Âchamana according to the rules of his own school or according to Paurâṇik method.

With the three words Keśava, Nārāyaṇa, Mādhava, he should drink water ; with the two words Govinda and Viṣṇu he should wash his hands ; with the two words Madhusūdana and Trivikrama he should touch his both lips ; and with the two words Vāmana and Śrīdhara he should rub the lips ; with the one word Hṛiṣīkeśa he should wash the hands ; then with the word Padmanābha he should wash his feet ; with Dāmodara, he should sprinkle the head ; with Sankarṣāṇa, the mouth ; with Vāsudeva and Pradyumna, the two nostrils ; with Aniruddha and Puruṣottama, the two eyes ; with Adhokṣaja and Nṛsiṃha, the two ears ; with Achyuta, the navel ; with Janārdana, the heart ; with Upendra, the head ; with Hari and Kṛiṣṇa, the two shoulders.

#### AUSPICIOUS NAKṢATRAS FOR UPANAYANA.

[After the ceremony of the celebration of the first commencement of alphabets, Bālabhaṭṭa gives a collection of various Saṅkalpa mantras employed in different ceremonies such as Garbhādhāna, Pūṃsavana, Sīmantonayana, Jātakarman, Nāmakarma, Niṣkrāmaṇ, Upaveśana, Annaprāśana, Choula, &c. These Saṅkalpa mantras are omitted here. The Saṅkalpa mantras of other ceremonies, not yet described, such as Sāvitrīpūjā Godāna, Samāvartana, Marriage, &c., are also collected here. The Saṅkalpas, according to Tantras, are also shown : so also the Tāntric form of some ceremonies. The mantras of Suryāvalokana, Niṣkrāmaṇ, Upaveśana and Annaprāśana are also given there.]

[Bālabhaṭṭa then enters into a long discussion as to the auspicious time for performing Upanayana. A summary of it is herein given.]

According to Vaśiṣṭha the following asterisms are auspicious, *i. e.*, when the moon is in these constellations the Upanayana may be performed :—

(1) Hastā, (2) Chitrā, (3) Svātī, (4) Śravaṇā, (5) Dhanīṣṭhā, (6) Śatabhiṣā (7) Uttarāṣāḍhā, (8) Abhijit, (9) Anurādhā, (10) Viśākhā, (11) Jyēsthā, (12) Uttaraphālgunī, (13) Revatī, (14) Punarvasu, (15) Puṣyā. These are good for tying the sacred girdle :—Uttaraphālgunī, Uttarāṣāḍhā, Uttara Bhādrapada, Hastā, Anurādhā, Mrigaśīrah, Rohiṇī, Chitrā, Revatī, and Punarvasu. These are good for Upanayana :—Āśvinī, Puṣyā, Dhanīṣṭhā, Śatabhiṣā, Svātī, Śravaṇā. These are middling.

Kaśyapa says :—

Anurādhā, Śravaṇa, Dhanīṣṭhā, Śatabhiṣā, Hastā, Chitrā, Svātī, Uttaraphālgunī, Uttarāṣāḍhā, Uttarabhādrapada, Abhijit, Punarvasu, Puṣyā, Āśvinī, Viśākhā. These are good stars for Upanayana.

Guru says :—

Uttara Phālgunī, Uttarāṣāḍhā, Uttara Bhādrapada, Rohiṇī, Hastā, Anurādhā, Jyēsthā, Chitrā, Punarvasu, Mrigaśīrah are good for Upanayana.

Nārada also :—

Uttaraphālgunī, Uttarāṣāḍhā, Uttara Bhādrapada, Jyēsthā, Mrigaśīrah, Punarvasu, Śravaṇa, Dhanīṣṭhā, Śatabhiṣā, Āśvinī, Anurādhā, Rohiṇī, are good for Upanayana.

According to Kalyāṇa Kalpadruma, the Rīg-vedins should observe the following constellations :—

Mūlā, Hastā, Chitrā, Svātī, Āśleṣā, Ārdrā, PūrvaPhālgunī, Pūrvaṣāḍhā, Pūrva-Bhādrapada. These are good for girdle ceremony for the Rīg-vedins.



The Yajur-Vedins, the following :—

Puṣyâ, Punarvasu, Revatî, Hastâ, Anurâdhâ, Mṛigaśirâh, Rohiṇî. These are best for Yajur-vedins, for upanayana.

The Sâma-Vedins, the following :—

Puṣya, Svâtî, Hastâ, Aśvinî, Ârdrâ, Śravaṇâ, Uttara Phâlgunî, Uttarâsâdha, Uttara-Bhâdrapada. These are good for Sâmayajin for tying girdle.

The Atharva-Vedins, the following :—

Mṛigaśirâh, Anurâdhâ, Aśvinî, Hastâ, Chitrâ, Svâtî, Punarvasu, Jyesthâ. These are good for Atharva-Vedins for Upanayana.

These sixteen asterisms are auspicious for the Upanayana of a Brâhmaṇa. Some reject Punarvasu. See Râja Martanda. Bâlambhaṭṭa, however, is of different opinion.

The Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas, have twenty-two asterisms, the Brâhmaṇas have sixteen.

[Then Bâlambhaṭṭa gives a short method of Upanayana to be observed in cases of penance. There are certain sins for which the penance is initiation *de novo*. This penitential Upanayana is not done with full rites of the original Upanayana.]

*Infirm may be initiated.*—According to Baudhâyana, the idiot, deaf and dumb may also be initiated. For their Upanayana, any season may be chosen : the asterism should be auspicious. After feeding the Brâhmaṇas, and causing them to pronounce blessing, the hair must be shaven : and the boy should have a bath. He should be dressed in pure clothes, the top-lock should be tied. All rites are gone through, but in silence, *i. e.*, without the utterance of the sacred formulas, as the boy, through infirmity, cannot recite the mantras, the âchârya does it for him.

[The method of Sandhyâ Upâsanâ, Bathing and Tilaka.]

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 22.

स्नानमब्दैवतैर्मन्त्रैर्मार्जनं प्राणसंयमः ।

सूर्यस्य चाप्युपस्थानं गायत्र्याः प्रत्यहं जपः ॥ २२ ॥

स्नानं Snânam, bathing, the morning-bath. अब्दैवतैः Abdaivatâih, with (mantras) addressed to the Waters. मन्त्रैः Mantrâih, with mantras, *e. g.*, आपोहिष्ठा, &c. मार्जनम् Mârjanam, sprinkling the water over the body. प्राणसंयमः Prâṇa-samyamah, the retention of breath. सूर्यस्य Sûryasya, for the sun. च Cha, and. अपि Api, even. उपस्थानं Upasthânam, (this word means), standing in the presence of, and with hands raised and folded together, addressing appropriate prayers to the object of worship. गायत्र्याः Gâyatryâh, of the Gâyatrî. प्रत्यहं Pratyaham, daily. जपः Japah, reciting, muttering silently.

22. Bathing, sprinkling the body with Mantras addressed to the Waters, retention of breath, adoration of the Sun and the daily repetition of the Gâyatrî should be performed.—22.

मिताक्षरा ॥

प्रातः स्नानं यथाशास्त्रम् । 'अब्दैवतैर्मन्त्रैः' आपोहिष्टेत्येवमादिभिः मार्जनम् । 'प्राणसंयमः' प्राणायामः, वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणः । ततः सूर्यस्य चाप्युपस्थानं सौरेण मन्त्रेण ।

‘गायत्र्याः’ तत्सवितुर्वरेण्यमित्यादेः प्रतिदिवसं जपः कार्यः । कार्यशब्दे यथालिङ्गं प्रत्येकमभिसंबध्यते ॥ २२ ॥

MITÂKṢARÂ.

Bathing early in the morning according to the rules ; sprinkling the body with appropriate scriptural Mantras, such as begin with “Âpo-hiṣṭhâ &c.,” addressed to the Waters.

The retention of breath is Prâṇâyâma to be described later on.

Then the adoration or Upasthâna or coming in the presence of the Sun with solar Mantras, and the daily repetition or muttering inaudibly the Gâyatrî, “Tat Savitur Vareṇyam, etc.,” be performed.

The phrase “must be performed ” is to be added to every one of the above clauses, by reason of its occurring in a previous passage.

Note.—The mantras addressed to waters are these :—

ओम् । आपोहिष्ठामयोभुवः तानऊर्जे दधातन । महेरण्या चक्षसे ॥

ओं । यो वः शिवतमोरसः तस्य भाजयतेह नः । उशतीरिव मातरः ॥

ओं । तस्मात्तरङ्गमामवः यस्य क्षयायजिन्वथ । आपो जनयथाच नः ॥

(Rig. X. 9. 1. to 3)

Om ; Âpo hiṣṭhâ mayobhuvah, tâna ūrje dadhātana, mahe raṇāya chakṣase.

Om ; Yo vah śivatamo rasah, tasya bhâjayate ha nah ; uśatîr iva mâtarah.

Om ; Tasmâ arah gamâma vah yasya kṣayâya jînvatha ; Âpo janayathâ cha nah.

O ye Âpas (All-pervading Divine Currents) since you are the sources of pleasure, help us therefore by giving us energy, so that we may feel the Mighty Sound.

That essence of yours which is most auspicious, of that a share give us here. As loving mothers (suck the babe).

O Waters ! we approach thee all for our sins to be destroyed, Give us strength to cope with sin.

ओं । द्रुपदादिवमुमुचानः स्विन्नः स्नातोमलादिव । पूतं पवित्रेणेवाज्यमापः शुन्धन्तु-  
मैनसः ॥ (Yajur Veda. XX. 20.)

Om, Drupadâdiva mumuchânah svinnah snâto malâdiva ; putam pavitrenev âjyam âpah shundhantu mainasah.

Om, even as the perspiring gets relief from the shade of the tree, as bathing removes the impurities of the body, as the ghee becomes purified by its purifying agent,—so let the Waters purify me from all-sins.

Then offer Arghya to the Sun. The mantras addressed to the Sun are these.

ओं । उद्वयं तमसस्परि स्वः पश्यन्त उत्तरम् । देवं देवत्रा सूर्यमगन्म ज्योतिरुत्तमम् ॥

Om ! Udvayam tamasas pari, Svah paśyanta uttaram ;

Devam Devatrâ Sūryam, aganma jyotir uttamam.

We have gone out of the encircling darkness, and have seen the high heaven, and the Divine Sun full of great light in the sky. (Rig Veda I. 50. 10.)

**ओम् । उदुत्यं जातवेदसं देवं वहन्ति केतवः । दृशे विश्वाय सूर्यम् ॥**

Om, Uduityam Jâtavedasam Devam vahanti ketavaḥ ; Driśe Viśvāya Sūryam.

His heralds bear Him up aloft, the God who knoweth all that lives ; Sūrya that all may look on Him. (Rig Veda I. 50. 1.)

**ओं । चित्रं देवानामुदगोदनीकं चक्षुर्मित्रस्य वरुणस्याग्नेः ।**

**आप्राद्यावापृथिवी अन्तरिक्षं सूर्य आत्मा जगतस्तथुषदश्चवाहा ॥**

(Rig. I. 115. 1.)

Om ! Chitram Devânâm udagâd anikam ; Chakṣur Mitrasya, Varu-  
nasyâgneḥ ;

Âprâ Dyâvâ Prithivî antarikṣam ; Sūrya âtmâ jagatas tasthuṣas cha.

The brilliant Presence of the gods hath risen, the eye of Mitra, Varuna and Agni.

The soul of all that moveth not or moveth, the Sun hath filled the air, earth and  
heaven.

**ओं । तच्चक्षुर्देवहितं पुरस्ताच्छुक्रमुच्चरत् । पश्येम शरदः शतं, जीवेम शरदः शतं ।  
शृणुयाम शरदः शतं, प्रब्रवाम शरदः शतम् । अदीनाः स्याम शरदः शतं, भूयश्च  
शरदः शतात् ॥**

Aum ! Tach chakṣur devahitam purastâch chhukram uchcharat.

Pasyema śaradaḥ śatam, Jivema śaradaḥ śatam, śṛiṇuyâm śaradaḥ  
śatam, Prabravâma śaradaḥ śatam, Adinâḥ syâma śaradaḥ śatam, Bhūyaś  
cha śaradaḥ śatât. (Rig Veda VII. 66. 16.)

That Eye (of the universe), the beloved of the Gods, the Brilliant (Sun) arises in the  
East. May we see for a hundred years, live for a hundred years, hear for a hundred years,  
speak for a hundred years, be rich for a hundred years—yea, more than hundred years.

*The Tilaka or mark on the Forehead.*

After Âchamana, the proper caste mark (tilaka) should be painted on the forehead.  
The mark may be made either with the thumb, or the middle finger or the ring finger or  
the index finger, according to the desire to be accomplished.

The mark should be made on various parts of the body, uttering the different names  
of Hari, as given in the following list :—

Forehead (lalâṭa)	...	...	...	...	Keśava.
Stomach	...	...	...	...	Nârâyana.
Heart	...	...	...	...	Mâdhava.
Throat	...	...	...	...	Govinda.
Right side of the stomach	...	...	...	...	Viṣṇu.
On the right arm	...	...	...	...	Madhusûdana.
Ear (right)	...	...	...	...	Trivikrama.
Left of the stomach	...	...	...	...	Vâmana.
Left arm	...	...	...	...	Śrîdhara.
Left ear	...	...	...	...	Hṛişikeśa.
Back	...	...	...	...	Padmanâbha.
Shoulder	...	...	...	...	Dâmodara.
Head (with Mûla Mantra)	...	...	...	...	Vâsudeva.

The forehead mark may be Ūrdhapuṇḍra for Śiva : or for Viṣṇu. On the head, the mark is to be made with the Mūla Mantra. In other places with the above twelve names. The mantras are : Om Keśavāya namaḥ (forehead), Om Nārāyaṇāya namaḥ (stomach), &c.

The forms of the mark are different in different parts of the body. In some places, it is a horizontal line, and in others vertical, &c. Thus near the ears it is vertical, near the heart like a lotus, on the stomach like a candle flame, like the bamboo leaf on the arms, like jambu fruit, under the shoulder, &c.

The forehead mark should be ten aṅgulas (quarter inches) in length. This is the best of all. The middling is nine aṅgulas, next is eight aṅgulas or seven, six or five aṅgulas : from the beginning of the nose to the beginning of the hair.

The sacred ash also may be similarly used. [The details of it are omitted].

### THE PRĀṆĀYĀMA.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 23.

#### मिताक्षरा ॥ प्राणायामस्वरूपमाह ।

*Mitākṣarā.*—The author now describes the nature (method) of the Retention of Breath.

गायत्रीं शिरसा सार्धं जपेद् व्याहृतिपूर्विकाम् ।

प्रतिप्रणवसंयुक्तां त्रिरयं प्राणसंयमः ॥ २३ ॥

गायत्रीं Gāyatrīm, the Gāyatrī. शिरसा Śīrasā, with the head (*i. e.*, āpojyotiḥ-somṛitam, etc.). सार्धं Sārdham, with. जपेद् Japet, is to be recited (one should recite). व्याहृतिपूर्विकाम् Vyāhṛti pūrvikām, preceded by the Vyāhṛtis. प्रतिप्रणवसंयुक्ताम् Pratipraṇavasamyuktām, each to be coupled by praṇava त्रि Triḥ, thrice. अयं Ayam, this. प्राणसंयमः Prāṇasamyamaḥ, retention of breath.

23. He should repeat inaudibly the Gāyatrī with its head and preceded by the Vyāhṛtis, to each of which the syllable Om should be added ; doing this thrice is known as the retention of breath.—23.

#### मिताक्षरा ॥

गायत्रीं पूर्वोक्ताम् । आपोज्योतिरित्यादिना शिरसा संयुक्ताम् उक्तव्याहृतिपूर्विकां प्रतिव्याहृतिं प्रणवेन संयुक्तां ॐभूः ॐभुवः ॐस्वरिति त्रीन् वारान् मुखनासिकासंचारिवायुं निरुन्धन्मनसा जपेदित्ययं सर्वत्र प्राणायामः ॥ २३ ॥

#### MITĀKṢARĀ.

The above mentioned Gāyatrī coupled with its Śīras, namely the Mantras “Āpojyotiḥ, &c.” and being preceded by the already mentioned Vyāhṛtis ; while to each Vyāhṛti is prefixed the syllable Om, as Om Bhūḥ, Om Bhuvah, Om Svar, Om, Mahah, &c., should be recited three times mentally, having restrained the breath flowing through the mouth and the nose. Such repetition is always called Prāṇāyāma.

## BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

The Prāṇāyama consists of three processes, first breathing in slowly through one nostril. It is technically named Pūraka. The second is retaining the breath by closing both nostrils, for a period more or less prolonged. It is called Kumbhaka. The third is breathing out slowly through the other nostril. It is called Rechaka. In Sandhyā, the period of time for each process is of the same duration, namely, the time taken in reciting the whole Gāyatrī and Śīras.

In performing Prāṇāyama, the left nostril should be closed by pressing it with the ring and little fingers of the right hand, and air drawn in through the right nostril. Then the right nostril should also be closed by the thumb; and the air retained. Then the ring and little fingers should be raised and the air expelled from the left nostril.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 24.

प्राणानायम्य संप्रोक्ष्य तृचेनाव्दैवतेन तु ।

जपन्नासीत सावित्रीं प्रत्यगातारकोदयात् ॥ २४ ॥

प्राणान् Prāṇān, breath. आयम्य Āyamyā, subduing. संप्रोक्ष्य Samprokṣya, sprinkling. तृचेन Trichenā, with the three mantras. अद्दैवतेन Abdaivatena, addressed to the Waters. तु Tu, and, but. जपन् Japan, reciting. आसीत Āsita, one should sit. सावित्रीम् Sāvitrīm, the Gāyatrī. प्रत्यक् Pratyak, face to the west. आतारकोदयात् Ā-tārakodayāt, till the stars rise.

24. Having restrained the breath and sprinkled water with the three *richas* (hymns) addressed to the Waters, let him sit, reciting the Sāvitrī, westward, till the stars rise.—24.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 25.

संध्यां प्राक् प्रातरेव हि तिष्ठेदासूर्यदर्शनात् ।

संध्यां Sandhyām, Sandhyā, twilight (sandhyā means the worship which is made in the joining of day and night). प्राक् Prāk, facing the east (first). प्रातः Prātaḥ, in the morning. एवं Evam, in the same manner. हि Hi, on the other hand. तिष्ठेत् Tiṣṭhet, one should stand. आ-सूर्यदर्शनात् Ā-Sūrya-darśanāt, till the appearance of the Sun.

25. In the morning twilight in the same manner, he should sit eastward till the sun is seen.—25.

## मिताक्षरा

प्राणायामं पूर्वोक्तं कृत्वा तृचेनाव्दैवतेन पूर्वोक्तेनात्मानमग्निः प्रोक्ष्य सावित्रीं जपन् प्रत्यक्संध्यामासीत । अर्थात्प्रत्यङ्मुख इति लभ्यते । 'आतारकोदयात्' तारकोदयावधि । प्राक्संध्यां प्रातःसमये । 'एवं' पूर्वोक्तविधिमाचरन् प्राङ्मुखः सूर्योदयावधि तिष्ठेत् । अहोरात्रयोः संधौ या क्रिया विधीयते सा संध्या । तत्र अहः संपूर्णादित्यमण्डलदर्शनयोग्यः कालः । तद्विपरीता रात्रिः । यस्मिन्काले खण्डमण्डलस्योपलब्धिः स संधिः ॥२४॥

## MITÂKṢARÂ.

Having performed the Prâṇâyâma as described above, and having sprinkled water on his body with the above mentioned three Mantras addressed to the Waters, and reciting the Sâvitri, "he should sit westwards in the twilight," meaning that the face should be towards the west. "Till the stars rise," so long as the stars do not rise.

"In the morning twilight," i. e., at the time of dawn, he should sit facing the east, till the rising of the sun, observing the above mentioned rules.

That prayer or ceremony which is ordained to be performed at the junction (Sandhi) of day and night is called Sandhyâ.

The day is that period of time during which the total disc of the sun is capable of being seen. The reverse of this is night. That time during which the solar disc is partially visible is called Sandhi or twilight.

## BÂLMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

[Bâlbhattacha gives here the method of the Sandhyâ prayer. We summarise it below. For fuller details, see our "Daily Practice of the Hindus."]

After Prâṇâyâma, one should perform japa both morning and evening. In the morning one should sit facing east, in the evening facing west.

[The various portions of the Sandhyâ are]:—

*Mantra Âchamana.*—This is done by reciting the mantras *Suryascha mâ manyus Cha, &c.*, in the morning; *Âpaḥ punantu, &c.*, at midday, and *Sûryascha, &c.*, again in the evening (with a slight change.) See the "Daily Practice."

*Second Mîrjana.*—After Âchamana, let him have mârjana, with Om, Vyâhritis Sâvitri, and the mantras *Âpo hi ṣṭhâ, &c.*, and Gâyatrî with Śîrasa (for details see the "Daily Practice").

## PÂPA PURUṢA NIRASANAM OR AGHAMARṢANA.

This is done by taking water in the hollow of the palm of the right hand, and thinking of the sin as personified and as coming out of the nostril and entering into this water. The verses *Ritaṃ cha Satyaṃ cha, &c.*, should be recited. Drive out the person of sin from the right nostril into this water, and without looking at it throw this water towards one's left on the ground. The Vâjasaṇeyins read also *Drupadâdiva*. While reciting the mantras the Prâṇas must be restrained. The sin is personified as having its head consisting of the sin of killing a Brâhmaṇa, the arms consist of the sin of stealing gold, the heart is made up of the sin of drinking wine, the loin is the sin of defiling the bed of one's spiritual preceptor; all the limbs are of sin, the hairs of the body are small sins, the beard and eyes are blood red, and he holds a sword and shield, and is of black color and residing in one's heart. See the "Daily Practice."

*Offering Arghya.*—Then Arghya should be given, as laid down in the *Grihya-Sûtras*. After Âchamana take a handful (Añjali) of water with durbha rice, flowers, sandal paste in it, stand facing the sun, recite the Sâvitri preceded by the Vyâhritis and the Praṇava, and offer three such handfuls. This offering is called Arghya-offering. Then perambulate saying "Asau Âditya Brahma," and then sip water. For details see the "Daily Practice."

*Japa.*—In the morning, mid-day and evening, one should recite the Gâyatrî, silently. He should think of the Devî, either in the heart, or in the solar orb. He should meditate

on the sense of the mantra, calmly and quietly, without hurry or worry. The mind should be contented, and pure and under control. He may recite it either 108 times or 28 times or at least 10 times, at each Sandhyâ. The counting should be made on the right hand which should be covered up with a cloth. One should not make japa while going or standing or doing some work or in an impure state, or keeping no count. He should not touch any portion of the body below the navel.

*The Āsana.*—The seat should be of silk or blanket or skin or flax or wood or leaves. The skin of black antelope gives knowledge, that of tiger emancipation and all desires, so also a spotted blanket gives all desires. The bamboo seat causes poverty, the stone causes disease; the earth, causes sorrow, the painted wooden seat, causes ill-luck; straw seat causes loss of wealth and fame, a seat made of leaves causes delusion or mental hallucination. The āsana mantra is given in “Daily Practice of the Hindus.”

*The rosary.*—It may be of conch shells of silver-like lustre or of lotus beads or rudrākṣa or crystal or gem or pearl or silver or golden beads or the phalanges of one's fingers. The fruit is one hundred, if the beads are of conch or gems; thousand, if made of coral; ten thousand, if made of crystal, a lac, if made of pearl, ten lacs if made of padmākṣa, koti if made of gold, and infinite, if of rudrākṣa.

The rosary may consist of 108 beads or 54 beads or 27 beads.

After japa one should bid farewell to the Gâyatrî with certain mantras. See the “Daily Practice of the Hindus.”

If owing to some accident, the morning or mid-day Sandhyâ be not performed, then it should be done in the early part of the night, within three hours of the sunset, in which no bath or Brahmajājña or solar hymns are necessary.

#### ĀCHAMANA MANTRAS.

ओं अग्निश्चमामन्युश्च मन्युपतयश्च मन्युकृतेभ्यः पापेभ्यो रक्षन्तां यदह्ना पापमकार्षे  
मनसा वाचा हस्ताभ्यां पद्भ्यामुदरेण शिश्ना रात्रिस्तदवलुम्पतु यत्किञ्च दुरितं मयि  
इदमहमामृतयोनौ सत्य ज्योतिषि परमात्मनि जुहोमि, स्वाहा ॥ T. A. X. 24.1.

[The explanation of Āchamana and the Gâyatrî Mantra is thus given in Bālabhāṭṭi.]

मा Mā, me; मन्युः Manyuḥ, the deity presiding over anger or wrath. (See Vedānta Sūtra II. 1. 5). मन्युपतयः Manyupatayaḥ, the lords of anger, who have conquered anger, the Mahātmas. इदं Idam, this (collection). मां Mām, me (i.e., my ahaṇikāra or egoism). अमृतयोनौ Amrita yonau, in the cause of Immortality, or Release called Agni. ज्योतिषि Jyotiṣi, in the Light i.e. in the Supreme Brahman. जुहोमि Juhomi, I offer or throw. For this purpose, the water full of mantra energy is poured into my Vital Fire as an oblation. This is the explanation of the night mantra also.

May the Supreme Brahman called Agni, and may the presiding Deva of anger and may the Great Souls, who have conquered anger, protect me from the sins committed by my spirit of anger (manyu). Whatever sin I have committed by night through my mind, speech, or hands or feet, or stomach or the organ, may Day destroy all that sin and its author (my egoism). I throw it (to be consumed) into this Agni, the luminous cause of Immortality, the Supreme Brahman.

आपः पुनंतु पृथिवीं पृथिवी पूता पूनातु मां । पुनंतु ब्रह्मणस्पतिर्ब्रह्मपूता पूनातु  
मां । यदुच्छिष्टमभोज्यं यद्वा दुश्चरितं मम । सर्वे पुनन्तु मामापोऽसतां च प्रतिग्रहम् ।  
स्वाहा ॥ Tait, A. X. 23.1

आपः Âpaḥ, the Waters, the All-pervading. पृथिवी Prithivî, the clod of earth, my physical body. मां Mâm, me, i.e. my Linga-deha or subtle body. ब्रह्मणः Brâmaṇaḥ, of the deva. पतिः Patiḥ, Lord, i.e. the Supreme Self. ब्रह्मः Brahma, the Veda. पूता Pûtâ, holy.

May the All-pervading purify this clod (my physical body), may my physical body thus purified, in its turn purify my subtle body. May the Lord of the Devas—the Supreme Self—purify me. May the sacred and the ever-pure Veda purify me, may the Âpas purify all sins, such as, eating the leavings of another, or improper food, or evil conduct or accepting gift from sinners. Svâhâ.

#### THE GÂYATRÎ WITH ITS VYÂHITRIS AND ŚĪRAS.

ओं भूः ॥ ओं भुवः ॥ ओं स्वः ॥ ओं महः ॥ ओं जनः ॥ ओं तपः ॥ ओं सत्यं ॥  
ओं तत्सवितुर्वरेण्यं भर्गो देवस्य धीमहि । धियो यो नः प्रचोदयात् ॥ ओं आपो ज्योती  
रसोमृतं ब्रह्म भूभुवस्स्वरोम् ॥

ओं Om, this syllable is the name of Param Brahman. भूः Bhuḥ, that in which all beings exist (bhavanti) is called Bhuḥ. भुवः Bhuvah, he who sustains (bhāvayati) and maintains the universe is called Bhuvah. सुवः Suvah, that which is easily attained. It is compound of सु well or easily and √पि to go, iryati suṣṭhuḥ. The affix is विच् ॥ महः Mahah, the adored : honored. or adorable. It is derived from the √māha to honor, and the affix असुन् । जनः Janaḥ, the creator : from the √जन् to create and the affix असुन् । तपः Tapah, the Punisher or Remorse-giver from the √तिष् to heat, with the affix असुन् ॥ सत्यं Satyam, the true : that which remains unchanged in all the three times, past, present and future, who is not conditioned by time. सवितुः Savituh, of the Inciter : the inner compeller, the conscience. वरेण्यं Vareṇyam, adorable. भर्गः Bhargah, the burning form, the form by which the bondage of Saṁsâra is consumed : the Sach-chid-ânanda form : the Bliss-form. धीमहि Dhimahi, we meditate. प्रचोदयात् Prachodayât, may he stimulate. आपः Âpaḥ, all-pervading. ज्योतिः Jyotiḥ, the Light, Intelligence. रसं Rasam, happiness. अमृतं Amṛitam, the Immortality, the Release. Thus is Brahman. ओम् Om, I acknowledge him : a particle of assent. That is, I meditate.

#### TRANSLATION.

*Vyâhritis.*—The Supreme Brahman (Om) is the support of all beings, and their Sustainer. He is easily attained : and is the Adorable, the Creator, the Punisher or Remorse-giver, and the Ever-true.

*Gâyatrî.*—We meditate on the adorable blissful form of God, the Conscience. May He stimulate all our faculties.

*Śîras.*—I acknowledge Brahman to be All-pervading, All-intelligence, All-happiness and Immortality. He is Bhuḥ (the all-support), Bhuvah (the all-nourisher), and Suvah (the all-approachable).

Another meaning of this Gâyatrî is :—

सवितुः Savituh, of the Creator of the whole Cosmos or the universe. देवस्य Devasya, of the sporting one : of the rock-seated Brahman. वरेण्यं Vareṇyam,



the best of all : whose form is the luminous Solar orb. भर्गः Bhargah, the Divine Fire. तत् Tat, that. "Tat" is the name of Brahman. It is not a pronoun. धीमहि Dhimahi, we meditate. "We" represents the one man in his physical and superphysical consciousnesses. Therefore it means : "I meditate in my ordinary consciousness, and in my sub-consciousness and super-consciousness." यः Yah, it is a compound of two words इ+अ=य। That is, Lakṣmī and Nārāyaṇa. नः Nah, our, *i. e.*, my three-fold consciousness धियः Dhiyah, cognitions, sensations and perceptions of true objects through external and internal senses.

I meditate (with my three-fold consciousness) on the adorable divine Fire of the unchangeable Creator : who is called Tat. May Lakṣmī and Nārāyaṇa stimulate my cognitions.

Another meaning of the Gâyatrî is :—

सवितुः Savituh, of the creator, *i. e.*, Brahmâ. देवस्य Devasya, of the supporting, *i. e.*, Viṣṇu. भर्गः Bhargah, of the Bharga, *i. e.*, Śiva, the Consumer or Destroyer. वरेण्यं Varenyam, the Adorable : the Turiya.

I meditate on God (who creates as) Brahmâ, sustains as Viṣṇu, and destroys as Śiva : and who as Turiya is above all these three, &c.

Or the word "Bharga" may mean 'food,' and "Dhiyah" mean "actions."

Through the grace of that God Savitâ, who stimulates our activities, may we be capable of upholding food : (*i. e.*, we get our daily food through the grace of God).

*Sandhyâ*.—A person is unclean, and incapable of performing any religious work if he does not perform the daily Sandhyâ. (Dakṣa). So also says Chhandoga Pariśiṣṭa. The conjunction of day and night—that time when there are neither stars nor sun—the twilight is called Sandhyâ. The time, however, of performing the evening prayer is just when the disc of the sun has gone half down the horizon : till the stars appear. In Vṛiddha Yājñavalkya, the time is when the sun has not risen (in the morning) and when it has not fully set (in the evening).

The word Sandhyâ, therefore, secondarily means all those acts, such as Prâṇâyâma, &c., prayers, &c., to be performed at that particular time. Others (Vṛiddha Yājñavalkya) mean by Sandhyâ, a particular Devî : presiding over these portions of the day. The morning is called Gâyatrî, the mid-day is Sâvitri, the evening is named Sarasvatî, the Goddess of morning is white, of the noon, red ; and of the evening, black or dark blue.

According to Mâdhava, it is called Sandhyâ, because this is performed at the time called Sandhyâ.

According to Nṛisimha, it is called Sandhyâ because it is complete (*sam*)-meditation, (*dhyā* = to meditate).

Some say that by Sandhyâ Upâsanâ is meant meditation, which is the principal part. Others say that Japa of the Gâyatrî is the principal part : and dhyâna is merely a subordinate part. According to Āśvalâyaṇa and Manu, Japa is the main part of Sandhyâ. (Manu IV. 94).

"By prolonging the Sandhyâ, the sages obtained long life, wisdom, honor, fame and excellence in Vedic knowledge."

This extract from Manu, regarding the Sandhyâ, shows that Japa is meant here by the word Sandhyâ : for Japa alone can be prolonged by reciting the mantra a thousand times or more ; and not Prâṇâyâma or others ; the time of which is strictly limited,

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 25—(continued.)

## अग्निकार्यं ततः कुर्यात्संध्ययोरुभयोरपि ॥ २५ ॥

अग्निकार्यं Agni-kāryam, fire worship. ततः Tataḥ, afterwards. कुर्यात् Kuryāt, one should perform संध्ययोः Sandhyayoḥ, in twilights. उभयोः Ubhayoḥ, both. अपि Api, even.

### मिताक्षरा ॥

‘ततः’ सन्ध्योपासनानन्तरं द्वयोः सन्ध्ययोः ‘अग्निकार्यं’ अग्नौ कार्यं समित्प्रक्षेपादि यत्तत्कुर्यात् स्वगृह्योक्तेन विधिना ॥ २५ ॥

25. Then the fire sacrifice should be performed, at both the twilights also.—25.

### MITÂKṢARÂ.

“Then” after performing the twilight prayers, he should perform at both twilights (morning and evening) the fire ceremony, i.e., the ceremony or work done in fire, such as, throwing fuel, &c., into it. This should be done according to the rules of one’s own Gṛihya-sûtras.

### BÂLAMBHATTA.

The force of the word “api,” “also,” in the verse is to ordain that the fire-sacrifice should be done at both twilights, and not in only one of them (either in the morning or evening). So also Manu (II. 186):—“Having brought sacred fuel from a distance, let him place it anywhere but on the ground, and let him, unwearied, make with it burnt oblations to the sacred fire, both evening and morning.” cf. Manu II. 176 also.

In omitting to perform this, there is sin, as declared by Hârita. Some say that this Homa should be done in the evening alone (Laugâkṣi).

The sacrificial wood should be as described by Kâtyâyana. It should not be thicker than one’s thumb; nor bark-less, nor worm-eaten, not more than a span in length, nor branching. In the Vâyaviya it is said that the fuel should be of Palâśa; in its absence, Khâdira, or Śami, or Rohitaka, or Aśvattha, may be used as Samidh.

If this fire-rite is omitted, one incurs guilt: and prâyaścitta must be performed. The time of its performance is before or after begging.

The Saṅkalpa.—Restraining the breaths, let him utter the Saṅkalpa:—“Prâṇân-âyama (Prâtar or Sâyam) Agni Kâryam Kariṣye.” Then taking the Samidh in hand recite:—

अग्नये समिधमाहर्षं बृहते जातवेदसे ।

तया त्वमग्ने वर्द्धस्व समिधा ब्रह्मणा वयं ॥ स्वाहा ॥ अग्नये इदं न मम ॥

Agnaye samidham âhârṣam, brihate jâtavedase

Tayâ tvam agne vardhasva samidhâ Brahmanâvayam.

“To Agni I have brought a piece of wood, to the great Jâtavedas. Through that piece of wood increase thou, O Agni; through the Brahman, may we increase. Svâhâ.” (Aśvalâyana. G.-S., I. 21. 1).

ओं तेजसामासमनजिम् । Om : tejasâmâsamanajmi.

मयि मेधां मयि प्रजां मय्यग्निस्तेजो दधातु ।

Mayi medhām mayi prajāṁ mayy agnis tejo dadhātu.

मयि मेधां मयि प्रजां मयीन्द्र इन्द्रियं दधातु ।

Mayi medhām mayi prajāṁ mayi Indra indriyam dadhātu.

मयि मेधां मयि प्रजां मयि सूर्यो भ्राजो दधातु ।

Mayi medhām, mayi prajāṁ, mayi Sūryo bhrājo dadhātu.

यत्ते अग्ने तेजस्तेनाहं तेजस्वी भूयासम् ।

Yat te agne tejas tenā'ham tejasvī bhūyaśam.

यत्ते अग्ने वर्चस् तेनाहं वर्चस्वी भूयासम् ।

Yat te agne varchas tenāham varchasvī bhūyaśam.

यत्ते अग्ने हरस् तेनाहं हरस्वी भूयासम् ।

Yat te agne haras tenā'ham harasvī bhūyaśam.

[The above is from the Aśvalāyana G.-S. We give the translation of the whole passage here.]

Having put the fuel (on the fire) and having touched the fire, he three times wipes off his face with (the words) "With splendour I anoint myself."

3. "For with splendour does he anoint myself"—this is understood (in the Śruti.)

4. "On me may Agni bestow insight, on me offspring, on me splendour.

"On me may Indra bestow insight, on me offspring on me strength (indriya).

"On me may Sūrya bestow insight, on me offspring, on me radiance."

"What thy splendour is, Agni, may I thereby become resplendent."

"What thy vigour is, Agni, may I thereby become vigorous."

"What thy consuming power is, Agni, may I thereby obtain consuming power."

Then taking the sacred ash (vibhūtim), let him recite :—

मा नस्तोके तनये मा न आयौ मा नो गोषु मानो अश्वेषु रिरिषः ।

वीरान् मा नो रुद्रभामिनो वधीर्हविष्मन्तः सदमित्वा हवामहे ॥ Rig Veda I.

114. 8.

Mâ nas toke, tanaye, mâ no âyau, mâ no goṣu, mâ na aśveṣu ririṣaḥ.

Virân mâ no Rudra bhâmīto vadhîr, haviṣmantāḥ sadamitvâ havamahe.

Harm us not, Rudra, in our seed and progeny, harm us not in the living, nor in cows or steeds.

Slay not our heroes in the fury of thy wrath. Bringing oblations evermore we call to thee.

त्र्यायुषं जमदग्नेः कश्यपस्य त्र्यायुषम् अगस्त्यस्य त्र्यायुषं यद् देवानां त्र्यायुषं तन्मे अस्तु त्र्यायुषम् शतायुषम् ।

Tryâyusaṁ Jamadagneḥ, Kaśyapaśya tryâyusaṁ, Agastyasya tryâyusaṁ, yad Devânām tryâyusaṁ tam me astu tryâyusaṁ śatâyusaṁ.

"The three-fold age of Jamadagni, Kaśyapa's three-fold age, the three-fold age of Agastya, the three-fold age that belongs to the devas ; may that three-fold age be mine, may that hundred-fold age be mine, Svâhâ." (VS. 3. 6. 2, H.G. 1. 9. 6.)

ओं च मे स्वरश्च मे यज्ञोप च ते नमश्च । यत्ते न्यूनं तस्मै त उपयतेतिरिक्तं तस्मै ते नमः ।

Om cha me Svaraścha me, Yajñopa cha te namaś cha. Yat te nyūnam tasmai ta upayate ti riktam tasmai te namaḥ. (Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sutra I. 11. 15).

Then recite the following Svasti Mantra :—

अद्धां मेधां यशः प्रज्ञां विद्यां बुद्धिश्चियं बलम् ।

आयुष्यं तेज आरोग्यं देहि मे हव्यवाहन । देहि मे हव्यवाहने नमो नमः ।

Śraddhām medhām Yaśaḥ prajñām vidyām buddhim śriyam balam.

Āyuṣyam teja ārogyam dehi me havyavāhana : dehi me havya vāhana

Om namo namaḥ.

“O Havyavāhana! Give me faith, memory, fame, wisdom, learning, intelligence, prosperity, strength long life, vigour, health. Give these to me O, Havyavāhana! Om, namo namaḥ.”

[Agni, of course, here means the Supreme God. Then recite any Agni-stotra.]

Then recite (the following names of God in the vocative) Keśava! Nārāyaṇa! Mādhava! Govinda! Viṣṇo! Madhusūdana! Trivikrama! Vāmana! Śrīdhara! Hṛīṣīkeśa! Padmanābha! Dāmodara! Saṅkarṣaṇa! Vāsudeva! Pradyumna! Aniruddha! Puruṣottama: Adhokṣaja! Nārasiṃha! Achyuta! Janārdana! Upendra! Hare! Śrī Kṛiṣṇāya namaḥ.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 26.

ततोऽभिवादयेद् वृद्धानसावहमिति ब्रुवन् ।

ततः Tataḥ, then. अभिवादयेत् Abhivādayet, one should bow to. वृद्धान् Vṛidhān, elders. असौ Asau, so and so. अहं Aham, I (“am” this verb is understood) इति Ii, this. ब्रुवन् Bruvan, saying

26. Then he should bow to the elders saying I am so and so.—26.

मिताक्षरा ॥

तदनन्तरं वृद्धान्गुरुप्रभृतीनामभिवादयेत् । कथम् ‘असौ’ देवदत्तशर्माऽहमिति स्वनाम कीर्तयेत् ॥

*Mitākṣarā*.—Afterwards he should humbly salute the ‘elders,’ the Guru, etc., How? By saying I am Deva Datta Śarmā, i.e., he should mention his name.

BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The saluting of the elders is of universal application and not confined to Sandhyā only. This verse lays down the method of such salutation whenever occasion may arise to salute the elders. So also Manu (II. 122 and 124):—“After the word of salutation, a Brāhmaṇa, who greets an elder must pronounce his name, saying, “I am N. N.” In saluting he should pronounce after his name the word bhoḥ; for the sages have declared that the nature of bhoḥ is the same as that of all proper names.”

After the word salutation, one should add the word “abhivādaye,” “I greet” (Pārijāta kṛā).

The word 'vipra' Brāhmaṇa' in the above text is illustrative of all twice-born castes. The formula of abhivādana is:—"Abhivādaye amuka Śarmā namāham asmi Bhoḥ." "I N. N. Śarmā by name greet." As to upasamgrahaṇa or feet-clasping, Manu further says (II. 72):—"With crossed hands he must clasp the feet of the teacher, always unwearied, must say: Ho, recite! He shall leave off when the teacher says: Let a stoppage take place."

Thus saying "Belonging to so and so gotra, I Deva Datta Śarmā bho abhivādaye." He should touch his both ears, and holding the feet of his Guru by his right and left hands respectively, he should bow down his head. This is Upasamagrahana. In abhivādana there is no clasping of feet; mere touching the feet is enough; or even not that. In Gāyatrī, abhivādana, the word abhivādaye comes last; as "amuka gotra Deva Datta Śarmāham bho abhivādaye." In ordinary abhivādana, the formula is "abhivādaye Deva Datta nāmāham asmi bhoḥ." There is, however, this speciality about twilight devotion abhivādana that the elders may do it to the younger also; as says Yama:—"In the Sandhyā, the elder may greet with abhivādana the younger also—with the exception of the son, the pupil, the daughter's son, and the husband of the daughter."

Manu lays down this specific rule of abhivādana (II. 123):—"To those persons who, when a name is pronounced, do not understand the meaning of the salutation, a wise man should say, 'It is I;' and he should address in the same manner all women."

That is, those who through their ignorance of Sanskrita or the Sacred Law, do not know the proper formula of abhivādana, should be addressed as mentioned above. In returning the abhivādana of an ignorant person, Manu lays down this rule (I. 126) "A Brāhmaṇa who does not know the form of returning a salutation, must not be saluted by a learned man; as a Śūdra, even so is he."

The proper method of returning an abhivādana greeting is thus laid down by Manu (II. 125). "A Brāhmaṇa should thus be saluted in return, 'may'st thou be long lived, O gentle one!' and the vowel अ must be added at the end of the name of the person addressed, the syllable preceding it being drawn out to the length of three moras (mātrās)."

Pāṇini also gives this rule.

Vaśiṣṭha also says thus (XIII. 46):—"When a salute is returned, the last vowel of the noun standing in the vocative is produced to the length of three moras, and if it is a diphthong (ए or ओ) changeable according to the Śandhi rules, it becomes āy (आय) or āv (आव), e. g. bho, bhāv." This text, indirectly shows that the conjunction of letters is not compulsory in every case. (The Sandhi is optional).

Says Manu (II. 134):—"Śrotṛiyas though three years intervene between their ages, but blood-relations only if the difference of age be very small." Among Śrotṛiyas (not related by blood), the elder is he who is older at least by three years, and deserves abhivādana. Among blood-relations, agnates or cognates, one who is older by a day even is to be so greeted. For "Vayasya" is defined as those born on the same day. Those who are not older by three years, Manu lays down the following rule (II. 127):—"Let him ask a Brāhmaṇa, on meeting him, after his health, with the word kuśala, Kṣatriya with the word anāmaya, a Vaiśya with the word kṣema, and a Śūdra with the word ārogya." This, of course, applies when a person of one caste meets with another of his own caste or a lower caste, but not when a person of a lower caste addresses one of a higher caste. Manu further says (II. 128):—"He who has been initiated to perform a Śrauta sacrifice must not be addressed by his name, even though he be a younger man; he who knows the sacred law must use in speaking to such a man the particle bhoḥ and the pronoun bhavat 'your worship.' (129). For a female, who is the wife of another man, and not a blood-relation, he must say, 'Lady' (bhavati) or! 'Beloved sister.'"

After the sacrifice is over, the name should be taken. These rules apply to married stage also, and not confined to students.

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa lays down the rule that he should study the Vedas also. A Brāhmaṇa should learn the particular branch (Śākhā) of the Veda, special to his family; and then learn the other Vedas. He should know the meanings also. Mere learning by rote is almost useless. Vasiṣṭha also insists on one's studying his own Śākhā with its appendages, and following the ritual of his own school, otherwise he incurs the guilt of Brahma-slaying. So also Manu (II. 108):—"A twice-born man who, not having studied the Veda applies himself to other and worldly study, soon falls, even while living, to the condition of a Śūdra and his descendants after him."

And Manu (IV. 99):—"Let him not recite the texts indistinctly, nor in the presence of Śūdras; nor let him, if in the latter part of the night he is tired with reciting the Veda, go again to sleep. (100.) According to the rule declared above, let him recite the daily portion of the Mantras, and a zealous Brāhmaṇa, who is not in distress, shall study the Brāhmaṇa and the Mantra Saṃhitā." So the study of the Saṃhitā or Mantra portion is absolutely necessary and can never be dispensed with, while the Brāhmaṇa portion may be dispensed with.

A Śūdra also, belonging to a respectable family and having good qualities should be taught, though not initiated with Upanayana शूद्रमपि कुलगुणसंन्नमनुपनीतमध्यापयेन् Suśruta states this opinion.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 26—(Continued.)

गुरुं चैवाप्युपासीत स्वाध्यायार्थं समाहितः ॥ २६ ॥

गुरुं Gurūṃ, the preceptor. च Cha, and then. एव Eva, even. Honor should be paid to the teacher *even* to the length of worshipping. उपासीत Upāsita, should worship or serve. स्वाध्यायार्थं Svādhyā-yartham, in order to learn the Veda. समाहितः Samāhitaḥ, composing himself.

26. He should serve or worship the preceptor for the sake or learning and should be attentive.—26.

मिताक्षरा ॥

तथा 'गुरुं' वक्ष्यमाणलक्षणम् 'उपासीत' तत्परिचर्यापरस्तदधीनस्तिष्ठेत् ॥  
'स्वाध्यायार्थम्' अध्ययनसिद्धये 'समाहितो' ज्विक्षिप्तचित्तो भवेत् ॥ २६ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

Then he should worship the "Guru" or the preceptor to be described later on; "worship," *i.e.* he should be devoted to his service and remain obedient to him.

"For the sake of learning," *i.e.* in order to get perfection in study: or to complete his studies.

"Be attentive"—He should not have his mind wandering about.

BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The force of च in the verse is to denote तथा 'then,' 'so also.' That is, something more should be done in the case of the Guru, than mere greeting, to which as an elder he is, of course, entitled. One must even go the length of "worshipping" him. That is to say, he must serve the Guru while a student, and be always obedient to him when the period of studentship is over. cf. Manu II. 71, 72, 191.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 27.

आहूतश्चाप्यधीयीत लब्धं तस्मै निवेदयेत् ।

हितं तस्याचरेन्नित्यं मनोवाक्कायकर्मभिः ॥ २७ ॥

आहूतः Āhūtaḥ, being invited, being called. च Cha, and, so also. अपि Api, even, only. अधीयीत Adhiyita, let him study. लब्धं Labdham, whatever may be acquired, which is obtained. च Cha, and. तस्मै Tasmai, to him, to the preceptor. निवेदयेत् Nivedayet, he should bestow, let him offer. हितं Hitam, good, beneficial. च Cha, and. तस्य Tasya, of this (preceptor). आचरेत् Ācharet, he should do, he should perform. नित्यं Nityam, always मनो-वाक्-काय-कर्मभिः Mano-vak-kāya-karmabhiḥ, by mind, speech and bodily acts.

27. And also he should study when invited. Whatever he obtains, he should present it to him. He should always promote his interest by all acts of mind, speech and body.—27.

मिताक्षरा ॥

‘आहूतश्चाप्यधीयीत’ गुर्वाहूत एवाधीयीत न स्वयं गुरुं प्रेरयेत् ॥ यच्च लब्धं तत्सर्वं गुरवे निवेदयेत् ॥ तथा ‘तस्य’ गुरोर्हितमाचरेत् ‘नित्यं’ सदा मनोवाक्कायकर्मभिः न प्रतिकूलं कुर्यात् ॥ अपिशब्दाद्गुरुदर्शने गौतमोक्तं कण्ठप्रावृत्तादि वर्जयेत् ॥ २७ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

“Invited he should study,” when he is invited by the Guru, he should not himself urge the Guru to teach him.

Whatever he obtains, he should offer all that to the Guru. Moreover he should promote “his” (the Guru’s) interest.

“Always,” constantly with all acts of mind, speech, and body. He should not do anything to his disadvantage.

By the use of the word “also” it is meant that when he is in the presence of his Guru, he should avoid “covering his throat,” “crossing his legs,” “leaning,” etc., as described by Gautama (Chap. II, v. 14).

BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The force of the word “api” in the verse is that of ‘eva’ or “only,” and so the commentator explains it as “āhūta eva.” cf. Manu II. 191, 73, 74.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 28

कृतज्ञाद्रोहिमेधावीशुचिकल्पानसूयकाः ।

अध्याप्या धर्मतः साधुशक्तासज्ज्ञानवित्तदाः ॥ २८ ॥

कृतज्ञः Kṛitajñaḥ, grateful. अद्रोही Adrohi, non-inimical : merciful. मेधावी Medhavi, intelligent, of retentive memory. शुचिः Śuchī, pure ; externally and

internally. कल्प Kalpa, well-made, healthy : fit. अनसूयकाः Anasūyakāḥ, non-jealous, non-envious : one who is honorable. Who does not proclaim the faults of his teacher. अध्याप्याः Adhyāpyāḥ, should be taught. धर्मतः Dharmataḥ, according to the sacred law. साधुः Sādhuḥ, virtuous, honest, शक्तः Śaktaḥ, energetic in doing service आप्तः āptaḥ a person connected by marriage or friendship, a kindred, a Bandhu. ज्ञान-(दः) Jñāna-(daḥ), one who imparts knowledge. वित्तदाः Vittalāḥ, who gives money.

28. Grateful, non-hating, intelligent, pure, healthy, non-envious, honest, energetic, kindred, one who imparts knowledge or makes present of money, such a student should be taught according to Dharma.—28.

मिताक्षरा ॥

कृतमुपकारं न विस्मरतीति कृतज्ञः। 'अद्रोही' दयावान्, 'मेधावी' ग्रन्थग्रहणधारणशक्तः, 'शुचिः' बाह्याभ्यन्तरशौचवान्, 'कल्पः' आधिव्याधिरहितः, 'अनसूयको' दोषानाविष्करणेन गुणाविष्करणशीलः, 'साधुः' वृत्तवान्। 'शक्तः' शुश्रूषायाम्, 'आप्तो' बन्धुः, 'ज्ञानदः' विद्याप्रदः, 'वित्तदः' अर्पणपूर्वकमर्थप्रदाता। एते गुणाः समस्ता व्यस्ताश्च यथासंभवं द्रष्टव्याः। एते च धर्मतः शास्त्रानुसारेणाध्याप्याः ॥२८॥

MITÂKSARÂ.

"Grateful," one who does not forget the benefits received. "Non-hating," merciful. "Intelligent," apt in understanding and retaining instruction. "Pure," clean in mind and body. "Healthy," free from mental and bodily disease. "Non-envious," he who does not expose the fault and publishes the good work of others. "Virtuous," bearing good character and conduct. "energetic," capable in doing service, "Kindred," Bandhus or cognates. "Giver of knowledge," one who teaches any science. "Giver of money," one who gives money as an offering, (not as a salary).

These qualities, whether existing in full or in part, must be looked after, as far as possible and such students should be taught "according to Dharma," i.e. in accordance with the scriptures. cf. Manu II. 109.

YAJÑAVALKYA'S VERSE 29.

दण्डाजिनोपवीतानि मेखलां चैव धारयेत् ।

ब्राह्मणेषु चरेद्भैक्षमनिन्द्येष्वात्मवृत्तये ॥ २९ ॥

दण्ड Daṇḍa, a staff. अजिन Ajina, antelope skin. उपवीतानि Upavītāni, the sacred thread. मेखलां Mekhalām, the sacred girdle. च Cha, and, along with. एव Eva, also. That is, also other things not detailed here are to be observed : such as the kinds of staff, the skin, &c. The 'eva' has the force of 'api.' ब्राह्मणेषु Brāhmaṇeṣu, among the Brāhmaṇas. चरेत् Charet, let him practisc. भैक्षम् Bhaikṣam, begging. अनिन्द्य Anindesu, among the blameless



29. He should also keep the staff, the skin, the sacred thread and the girdle. He should beg from blameless Brāhmaṇas for supporting the body.—29.

मिताक्षरा ॥

तथा स्मृत्यन्तरप्रसिद्धं पालाशादिदण्डम्, 'अजिनं' च काष्णीजिनादि 'उपवीतं' कार्पासादिनिर्मितं, मेखलां च मुञ्जादिनिर्मितां ब्राह्मणादिब्रह्मचारी धारयेत् पूर्वोक्तदण्डादियुक्तो ब्रह्मचारी ब्राह्मणेषु "अनिन्द्येषु" अभिशस्तादिदोषरहितेषु स्वकर्मनिरतेषु भैक्षं चरेत् 'आत्मवृत्तये' आत्मनोजीवनाय न परार्थम् आचार्यतद्भार्यापुत्रव्यतिरेकेण । निवेद्य गुरवे तदनुज्ञातो भुञ्जीत तदभावे तत्पुत्रादौ इति नियमात् । अत्र च ब्राह्मणग्रहणं संभवे सति न नियमार्थम् । यत्तु सार्ववर्णिकं भैक्षाचरणमिति, तत् त्रैवर्णिकप्राप्त्यर्थम् । यच्च चातुर्वर्ण्यं चरेद्भैक्षमिति, तद् आपद्विषयम् ॥ २९ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

Then according to the well-known directions laid down in other Smritis (Manu Chap. II, Verse 41, &c.,) the student belonging to the Brāhmaṇa class, &c., shall keep a staff of palāśa wood (*butea frondosa*), &c., skin of black antelope, &c., the sacred thread made of cotton, &c., and the girdle made of Moonja (*Saccarum moonja*), &c.

The aforesaid Brahmachârî, wearing the staff, &c., should beg from "Brāhmaṇas who are blameless," *i. e.*, free from the faults of being an abhiśasta (one accused of a mortal sin,) &c., and who are devoted to their proper duties.

"For self support," for maintaining his own self, and not others (strangers, with the exception of his guru, and guru's wife and son; because of the following rule (of Vasiṣṭha):—

"Having offered it to the Guru, he should eat having got his permission, or, in his absence, with the permission of his sons, &c."

The specification of Brāhmaṇa here is, in case when it is possible to get one of that class, and is not an imperative rule.

As to the text "from all classes, the asking of alms," it means the first three classes only.

As to the text "he may beg from the *four* classes," it refers to cases of distress only.

BĀLAMBAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

*The staff.*—The Dharma sūtra says:—"The staff of a Brāhmaṇa should be of Palāśa wood." So also Manu (II. 45):—"A Brāhmaṇa shall carry, according to the sacred law, a staff of Bilva or Palāśa; a Kṣatriya, of Vaṭa or Khadira; and a Vaiśya, of Pippala or Udumbara."

Yama quoted in the Mādhaviya lays down an optional rule:—"If these woods are not procurable, then all may use the woods of all sacrificial trees for their staves."

Manu lays the length of the staff (II. 46).—"The staff of a Brâhmaṇa shall be made of such length as to reach the end of his hair; that of a Kṣatriya, to reach his forehead; and that of a Vaiśya, to reach the tip of his nose."

Gautama also lays down the length as reaching the top of the head, the forehead, and the tip of the nose, respectively.

Manu gives the following marks of the staff (II. 47) :—"Let all the staves be straight, without a blemish, handsome to look at, not likely to terrify men, with their bark perfect, unhurt by fire."

#### GARMENTS.

As regards the skin, Manu says (II. 41) :—"Let students, according to the order of their castes, wear as upper dresses the skins of black antelopes, spotted deer, and he-goats, and lower garments made of hemp, flax or wool."

So also Vaśiṣṭha (XI. 61-63) as quoted in the Mādhabīya :—"The upper dress of a Brâhmaṇa shall be the skin of black antelopes; that of a Kṣatriya, the skin of a spotted deer; of a Vaiśya, a cow skin, or the hide of a he-goat."

Pāraskara lays down the following (II. 5. 17-20) :—"The upper garment of Brâhmaṇa should be an antelope skin; that of a Kṣatriya, the skin of a spotted deer; that of a Vaiśya, a goat's or a cow's skin. Or if the prescribed sort of garment is not to be had, a cow's hide should be worn by all."

In the Agni Purāṇa :—"The skins of antelopes, of tigers, and of goats, respectively, for the Brahmachârins of each caste." So also the Dharma sūtra. Yama gives an option :—"Or all may use the skin of the antelope." Gautama lays down the following rule about the inner garment :—"The garments of hemp, flax, grass (chîra) and wool (kutapa) are for all."

Gautama gives an alternative :—"Or undyed cotton garment for all. Some say it may be dyed yellow. The garment of the Brâhmaṇas should be without any colour or dyed with colour exuding from a tree, of the Kṣatriya dyed with madder and of the Vaiśya, dyed with turmeric."

Vaśiṣṭha says (XI. 64) :—"The lower garment of a Brâhmaṇa shall be white and unblemished. (65) That of a Kṣatriya, dyed with madder. (66) That of a Vaiśya, dyed with turmeric or made of raw silk. (67) Or a dress made of undyed cotton cloth may be worn by students of all castes." [The reading of Bâlabhāṭṭa is somewhat different from that of the S. B. E.]

#### UPAVÎTA OR THE SACRED THREAD.

Manu says (II. 44) :—"The sacrificial string of a Brâhmaṇa shall be made of cotton, shall be twisted to the right, and consist of three threads, that of a Kṣatriya of hempen threads, and that of a Vaiśya of woollen threads."

If this cannot be got, then Devala lays down :—"The twice-born should keep the sacred thread made of cotton flax, goṡâla (cow's hair), hempen (sâna), bark of tree, or straw, as he can get." This should be of new thread, as laid down by Devala. The thread should be spun in a pure place, and by pure persons.

[Baudhâyaṇa says (I. 5. 5) :—"The sacrificial thread shall be made of kusâ grass, or cotton, and consist of thrice three strings. (6) It shall hang down to the navel. (7) In putting it on he shall raise the right arm, lower the left, and lower the head. (8) The contrary is done at sacrifices to manes. (9) If the thread is suspended round the neck, it is called nivîta. (10) If it is suspended below the navel it is called adhopaṡvîta."]

When the sacrificial thread becomes damaged a new one should be taken. Manu (II. 64) :—"His girdle, the skin which serves as his upper garment, his staff, his sacrificial thread, and his waterpot he must throw into the water, when they have been damaged, and take others, reciting mantras."

The number of the strings depends upon the particular desire that, may be entertained. As says Pārāśara :—" He who desires long life, should have many sacrificial strings in his sacred thread ; he who desires sons, should have five such strings, similarly he who wants dharma; ten or eight, the house-holder , four strings, the hermit, the ascetics and the Brahmachārins should have one sacred thread each." So also in another Smṛiti :—" Two sacred threads should be worn in Śrauta and Smārta rites ; a third for the sake of garment (uttariya), one desiring long life should have many."

The mode of wearing the sacrificial string differs according to the nature of the rite that has to be performed. It can be worn in three ways (1): Passing under the right arm pit, (2) Passing under the left arm pit, (3) Or in the neck.

5. The sacrificial thread (shall be made) of kuśa grass, or cotton (and consists) of thrice three strings.

6. (It shall hang down) to the navel.

7. (In putting it on) he shall raise the right arm, lower the left, and lower the head.

8. The contrary (is done at sacrifices) to the manes.

9. (If the thread is) suspended round the neck, (it is called) nivita.

10. (If it is) suspended below (the navel it is called) adhopavita.

11. Let him perform (the rite of personal) purification, facing the east or the north, (and) seated in a pure place ; (let him) place his right arm between his knees and wash both hands up to the wrist and both feet (up to the ankles).

Āpastamba gives the following rules as to the mode of wearing it (Ās. G.-S., I. 1.1.) :—

1. Now (follow) the ceremonies (the knowledge of) which is derived from practice (and not from the Śruti).

2. They should be performed during the northern course of the sun, on days of the first fortnight (of the month) on auspicious days.

3. With the sacrificial cord suspended over (the sacrificer's) left shoulder.

4. (The rites should be performed) from left to right.

5. The beginning should be made on the east side or on the north side.

6. And also the end.

7. Ceremonies belonging to the father's (are performed) in the second fortnight (of the month).

8. With the sacrificial cord suspended over the right shoulder.

9. From right to left.

10. Ending the south.

### THE VEDIC STUDY.

Thus in the Chapter on Five great sacrifices Āsvalāyana lays down the following rules as to Vedic study (Ās. G.-S., III. 2.) :—

1. Now the rules how one should recite (the Vedic texts) for one's self.

2. He should go out of the village to the east or to the north, bathe in water, sip water in a clean spot, clad with the sacrificial cord ; he should spread out his garment being not wet, a great quantity of Darbha grass, tufts of which are directed toward the east, and should sit down thereon with his face turned to the east, making a lap, putting together his hands in which he holds purifiers (i. e., Kuśa blades), so that the right hand lies uppermost.

It is understood (in the Śruti) 'This is what Darbha grass is: it is the essence of waters and herbs. He thus makes the Brahman provided with essence.'

Looking at the point where heaven and earth touch each other, or shutting his eyes, or in whatever way he may deem himself apt (for reciting the Veda), thus adapting himself he should recite (the sacred texts) for himself.

3. The Vyāhritis preceded by (the syllable) Om (are pronounced first).

4. He (then) repeats the Sâvitri (Rig-Veda III, 62, 10), (firstly) Pâda by Pâda, (then) hemistich, by hemistich, thirdly the whole.

Baudhâyana lays down the following on the Five great sacrifices (III. 11. 1):—

1. Now these five great sacrifices, which are also called the great sacrificial sessions, are the sacrifice to be offered to the gods, the sacrifice to be offered to the manes, the sacrifice to be offered to all beings, the sacrifice to be offered to men, (and) the sacrifice to be offered to Brâhman.

2. Let him daily offer (something to the gods with the exclamation) Svâhâ, be it only a piece of fuel. Thereby he performs that sacrifice to the gods.

3. Let him daily offer (something to the manes with the exclamation) Svadhâ, be it only a vessel filled with water. Thereby he performs that sacrifice to the manes.

4. Let him daily pay reverence to (all beings) endowed with life. Thereby he performs that sacrifice to the beings.

5. Let him give food to Brâhmaṇas, be it only roots, fruit, or vegetables. Thereby he performs that sacrifice to men.

6. Let him daily recite the Veda privately, be it only the syllable Om or the Vyâhritis. Thereby he performs that sacrifice to be offered to Brâhma.

*Eating alms.*—So also Manu (II, 48, 51):—"Having collected as much food as is required from several persons, and having announced it without guile to his teacher, let him eat, turning his face towards the east, and having purified himself by sipping water."

As regards the persons from whom one should beg, Manu lays down:—(II. 183, 184, 185):—"A student, being pure, shall daily bring food from the houses of men who are not deficient in the knowledge of the Veda and in performing sacrifices, and who are famous for following their lawful occupations. (184.) Let him not beg from the relatives of his teacher, nor from his own or his mother's blood-relations; but if there are no houses belonging to strangers, let him go to one of those named above, taking the last named first. (185.) Or if there are no virtuous men of the kind mentioned above, he may go to each house in the village, being pure and remaining silent; but let him avoid abhiśastas (those accused of mortal sin)."

According to Yama he should not collect more food than is required for eating: if he collects more, he incurs the sin of theft.

As a rule, one should beg from one's own caste: and from the best among them. In cases of distress, he may beg from other castes: but seldom from a Śûdra, except uncooked dry food.

YÂJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 30.

आदिमध्यावसानेषु भवच्छब्दोपलक्षिता ।

ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियविशां भैक्षचर्या यथाक्रमम् ॥३०॥

आदि Âdi, in the beginning. मध्य Madhya, in the middle. अवसानेषु Avasāneṣu, at the end. भवत् Bhavat, 'Lady.' शब्द Śabda, word. उपलक्षिता Upalakṣitā, marked with; qualifying the word bhaikṣacharyā. ब्राह्मण-क्षत्रिय-विशां Brâhmaṇ-ksatriya-viśām, of the Brâhmaṇa, the Kṣatriya and the Vaiśya. भैक्षचर्या Bhaikṣa-charyā, the method of request: the formula to be used in requesting or begging. यथा क्रमम् Yathā-kramam, according to order, respectively.

30. In requesting food, the Brâhmaṇa, Kṣatriya and Vaiśya should use the word "Lady" in the beginning, middle and the end, respectively.—30.

## मिताक्षरा ॥

कथं भैक्षचर्या कार्या ? आदिमध्यावसानेषु भवच्छब्दापलक्षिता, भवति भिक्षां देहि भिक्षां भवति देहि भिक्षां देहि भवति इत्येवं वर्णक्रमेण भैक्षचर्या कार्या ॥ ३० ॥

## MITÂKṢARĀ.

How is the begging to be performed ? In the beginning, the middle and the end the word "Lady" is to be used. "Lady, give alms," "give, lady, alms," "give alms, lady," is to be used respectively, according to the order of classes, while begging.

## BĀLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The Brâhmana student should beg with the formula "Lady, give alms :"(the Kṣatriya student should say "give, Lady, alms" and the Vaiśya student should say "give alms, Lady"). As says Manu (II. 49, and 50) :—"An initiated Brâhmana should beg, beginning his request with the word lady (bhavati) ; a Kṣatriya, placing the word 'Lady' in the middle ; but a Vaiśya, placing it at the end of the formula. 50. Let him first beg food of his mother, or of his sister, or of his own maternal aunt, or of some other female, who will not disgrace him by a refusal."

## YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 31.

कृताग्निकार्यो भुञ्जीत वाग्यतो गुर्वनुज्ञया ।

अपोशनक्रियापूर्वं सत्कृत्यान्नमकुत्सयन् ॥३१॥

कृताग्निकार्यः Kṛtâgni-kâryaḥ, having done fire ceremony. भुञ्जीत Bhunjîta, he may eat, let him eat. वाग्यतः Vâgyataḥ, being silent, speech-controlled, speech-restrained. गुर्वनुज्ञया Gurvanujñayā, with the permission of his Guru. अपोशन-क्रियापूर्वं Aposâna-kriyâpûrvam, after having done the aposâna work. सत्कृत्य Satkṛitya, honoring. अन्नम् Annam, the food. अकुत्सयन् Akutsayan, not abusing it.

31. Having performed the fire sacrifice and obtained the permission of his Guru, and after having done the aposâna work, let him eat, with speech-controlled, honoring the food and not abusing it.—31.

## मिताक्षरा ॥

पूर्वीक्रेन विधिना भिक्षामाहृत्य गुरवे निवेद्य तदनुज्ञया कृताग्नि कार्यो 'वाग्यतो' मैत्री अन्नं 'सत्कृत्य' संपूज्य 'अकुत्सयन्' अनिन्दन् 'अपोशनक्रियापूर्वम्' अमुतो-पस्तरणमसीत्यादिकं पूर्वं कृत्वा भुञ्जीत । अत्र पुनरग्निकार्यग्रहणं संख्याकाले कथंचिद-कृताग्निकार्यस्य कालान्तरविधानार्थं, न पुनस्तृतीयप्राप्त्यर्थम् ॥ ३१ ॥

## MITÂKṢARĀ.

Having collected alms, according to the above-mentioned rule, presenting it to the Guru, he should eat with his permission, after having performed the fire sacrifice and "speech-controlled," being silent, "honoring" or worshipping the food, and not "abusing" or disparaging it,

The eating should be preceded by the Aposāna ceremony i. e., repeating the mantra *Amrito'pastaraṇamasi*, &c.

The mentioning of the fire-sacrifice again in this place is to declare an alternative period ; in case if the morning (or evening) twilight sacrifice has been inadvertently omitted, of its being now performed ; but does not prescribe a third period.

#### BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

He who has controlled or restrained his speech is called vâg-yata or speech-controlled. It is a Bahuvrîhi compound. The word apo-āna is an onomatopæic word : as one drinking water (gaṇḍuṣa) before eating, this sibilant sound is emitted, the ceremony itself is called aposāna. The method of showing puja to food is thus given by Hārta :—"He looks at the food, shows it to the sun, warms it before fire, presents it to his teacher, gets his permission, and then eats. (See the "Daily Practice of the Hindus.")

The third period means the noon. The fire-sacrifice is to be done in the morning and evening sandhyās, and not at noon (apparently). Says Manu (II. 54-55):—"Let him always show reverence to his food, and eat it without contempt ; when he sees it, let him rejoice, show a pleased face, and pray that he may always obtain it. (55.) Food, that is always respected, gives strength and manly vigour, but eaten irreverently, it destroys them both."

#### YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 32.

ब्रह्मचर्ये स्थितो नैकमन्नमद्यादनापदि ।

ब्राह्मणः काममश्नीयाच्छ्राद्धे व्रतमपीडयन् ॥ ३२ ॥

ब्रह्मचर्ये Brahmacharye, in the state of a Brahmachāri or student. स्थितः sthitah, practising, staying. न Na, not. एकं Ekam, one. अन्नम् Annam, food. अद्यात् Adyāt, should eat. अनापदि Anāpadi, except in distress. ब्राह्मणः Brāhmaṇah, a Brāhmaṇa. कामे Kāmam, optionally. अश्नीयात् Aśniyāt, may eat. श्राद्धे Śrāddhe, at a Śrāddha. व्रतं Vratam, rules of the vow. अपीडयन् Apīḍayan, without breaking.

32. Performing the duties of a student, he should not eat, otherwise than in distress, the food begged from one person only. A Brāhmaṇa may, at his pleasure, eat such food, in a śrāddha (at a funeral meal), but without breaking the conditions of his vow (as regards the kind of food).

मिताक्षरा ॥

ब्रह्मचर्ये स्थितः एकान्नं नाद्यादनापदि व्याध्याद्यभावे । ब्राह्मणः पुनः श्राद्धेऽभ्यर्थितः सन्काममश्नीयात् । व्रतमपीडयन् मधुमांसपरिहारेण । अत्र ब्राह्मणग्रहणं क्षत्रियादेः श्राद्धभोजनव्युदासार्थम् ॥

राजन्यवैश्ययोश्चैव नैतत्कर्म प्रचक्षते इति स्मरणात् ॥ ३२ ॥

## MITÂKṢARĀ.

While remaining a Brahmachâri, he should not eat the food (collected from begging) from one person. "When not in distress," i. e., when he is not sick, &c. A Brâhmaṇa, however, being invited to a Śrâddha (funeral feast) may eat, at his pleasure.

"Without breaking the rules of his vow," avoiding honey and meat.

The word "Brâhmaṇa" is specified in order to exclude the Kṣatriyas, &c., from taking food in Śrâddhas. As it is said in a Smṛiti (Manu II, 190) "This duty is prescribed by the wise for a Brâhmaṇa only; but no such duty is ordained for a Kṣatriya and a Vaiśya."

## BÂLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

The words 'ekam annam' do not mean 'one food' &c., (or one kind of food), but the food obtained from begging from one person only: as says Manu (II. 188):—"He who performs the vow of studentship shall constantly subsist on alms, but not eat the food of one person only." An exception to this is declared by Manu (II. 189):—"At his pleasure he may eat, when invited, the food of one man at a rite in honor of the Devas, observing however the conditions of his vow, or at a funeral meal in honor of the manes, behaving however like a hermit. This duty is prescribed by the wise for a Brâhmaṇa only."

[Bâlabhaṭṭa reads 'prârthita' instead of 'abhyarthita' in the Vijñâṇeśvara's commentary].

The word 'madhu' here means 'honey' and not 'wine.'

## YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 33.

मधुमांसाञ्जनाच्छिष्टशुक्तस्त्रीप्राणिहिंसनम् ।

भास्करालोकनोऽश्लीलपरिवादादि वर्जयेत् ॥ ३३ ॥

मधु Madhu, honey. मांस Maṁsa, meat. अञ्जन Añjana, ointment and collyrium. उच्छिष्ट Uchchhiṣṭa, leavings of food, orts. शुक्त Śukta, harshness of word. This word literally means 'acid or sour,' and refers to food turned sour, e. g., curd, vinegar, &c. स्त्री Strī, a woman. प्राणिहिंसनं Prāṇi-hiṁsanam, harming or slaying animals. भास्करालोकनं Bhāskarālokana, looking at the (rising or setting) sun. अश्लील परिवादादि Aślīla parivādādi, vulgar speech false speaking, and slander. वर्जयेत् Varjayet, he should abstain or abandon.

33. He should renounce honey, meat, ointments, orts, sourness, women, harming animals, looking at the sun, vulgar speech and slander and the rest.—33.

## मिताक्षरा ॥

मधु क्षौद्रं न मद्यं तस्य नित्यं ब्राह्मणो मद्यं वर्जयेदिति निषेधात् । मांसं छागादेरपि । अञ्जनं घृतादिना गात्रस्य कज्जलादिना चाक्षेपोः । उच्छिष्टं अगुरोः । शुक्तं निष्ठुरवाक्यं नाश्वरसः । तस्याभक्ष्यप्रकरणे निषेधात् । स्त्रियमुपभोगे । प्राणिहिंसनं जीववधः । भास्करस्योदयास्तमयावलोकनम् । अश्लीलमसत्यभाषणम् । परिवादः सदसद्रूपस्य परदोषस्य

ख्यापनम् । आदिशब्दात्स्मृत्यन्तरोक्तं गन्धमाल्यादि गृह्यते । एतानि ब्रह्मचारी वर्जयेत्  
॥ ३३ ॥

## MITÂKṢARÂ.

"Honey," the bee-made honey, and not wine (that being also the meaning of the word *Madhu*). The wine being totally prohibited by the text, "a Brâhmaṇa should avoid wine." "Meat," even that of goat, etc., "ointment," such as clarified butter, &c., for anointing the body, and the collyrium, &c., for the eye. "Orts" except those of his Guru. "Sourness" means rude speech and not food turned sour, for the latter is prohibited in the chapter on non-eatables (forbidden food). "Women," in matters relating to enjoyment. "Harming animals," killing living creatures. "Looking" at the rising and setting sun. "Vulgar speech," false speaking. "Slander," publishing another's faults, whether true or untrue.

By "and the rest" are included sweet scents, garlands, sandal paste, &c., as mentioned in other Smritis. A Brahmachârî must avoid all these.

## BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

The wines are of twelve kinds as described by Pulastya and Viṣṇu. Says Manu (II v. 177):—"Let him abstain from honey, meat, perfumes, garlands, excessive exhilaration, women, all substances turned acid, and from doing injury to living creatures." (178) From anointing his body, applying collyrium to his eyes, from the use of shoes and of an umbrella or parasol, from sensual desire, anger, covetousness, dancing, singing and playing musical instruments. (179) From gambling, idle disputes, back-biting, lying, from looking at and touching women, and from hurting others (180) Let him always sleep alone, let him never waste his manhood, for he who voluntarily wastes his manhood, breaks his vow." The word *rasa* means exhilaration and not 'substances used for flavouring food.' By 'shoes,' the riding on carriage also is prohibited : see Gautama. According to Nârâyana, the word *rasa* means strong sweets like molasses, &c., as well as poetical *rasas* or sentiments : such as erotic lyrics, &c.

The word 'śukta' explained as rude speech, by Vijñāneśvara, is explained by the commentator of Manu, as "things turned acid, a thing which was not acid before, but which through lapse of time or by admixture of other substances has fermented and become acid : such as curds, &c."

He should avoid looking in mirrors : or rubbing teeth, chewing betel, or using bell-metal dishes. He should take his food in an iron or earthen vessel. "A student must not shampoo the limbs of his teacher's son, nor assist him in bathing, nor eat the remnants of his food, nor wash his feet. Let him not perform for a wife of his teacher the offices of anointing her, assisting her in the bath, shampooing her limbs or arranging her hair." —(Manu II, 209, 211).

## YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 34.

स गुरुः क्रियाः कृत्वा वेदमस्मै प्रयच्छति ।

उपनीय ददद्वेदमाचार्यः स उदाहृतः ॥ ३४ ॥

सः Saḥ, he. गुरुः Guruh, Guru, the spiritual guide. He who performs all sacraments on the boy, from the ante-natal garbhadhâna up to Upanayana.



यः Yaḥ, who. क्रियाः Kriyāḥ, ceremonies, beginning with Garbhâdhâna rite. कृत्वा Kṛtvā, performing, having performed. वेदं Vedam, the Veda. अस्मै Asmai, to him. प्रयच्छति Prayachchhati, gives, imparts. उपनीय Upanīya, having performed Upanayana ceremony. ददत् Dadat, gives. वेदं Vedam, the Veda. आचार्यः Âchâryaḥ, Âchârya, the preceptor. सः Saḥ, he. उदाहृतः Udâhṛitaḥ, is called.

34. He is called the Guru who after performing (all) the ceremonies, (on the child from before its birth) gives him the Vedas; and he is called the Âchârya, who having performed Upanayana, gives him the Vedas.—34.

मिताक्षरा ॥

येसौ गर्भाधानाद्या उपनयनान्ताः क्रिया यथाविधि कृत्वा वेदमस्मै ब्रह्मचारिणे प्रयच्छति स गुरुः । य पुनरुपनयनमात्रं कृत्वा वेदं ददाति स आचार्यः ॥ ३४॥

MITÂKṢARÂ.

He who performing *all* the rites, according to rule, beginning with the Garbhâdhâna (conception) ceremony and ending with Upanayana (investiture with the sacred thread), teaches the Vedas to "him" the Brahmachârî, is called a Guru. He again who only performing Upanayana, teaches the Vedas is an Âchârya.

BÂLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Says Manu (II. 142):—"That Brâhmaṇa, who performs in accordance with the rules of the Veda the rites, the Garbhâdhâna, and so forth, and gives food to the child, is called the Guru. The pupil must know that, that man also who benefits him by instruction in the Veda, be it little or much, is called in these institutes his Guru, in consequence of that benefit conferred by instruction in the Veda. He who, being duly chosen for the purpose, performs the Agnâdheya, the Pâkayajñas and the Śrauta sacrifices, such as the Agnistoma for another man, is called his officiating priest."

The Kalpas and Rahasyas are also included in the Vedas (Manu II, 140):—"They call that Brâhmaṇa who initiates a pupil and teaches the Veda together with the Kalpa and Rahasyas, the teacher (Âchârya of the latter)."

Says Manu (II. 141):—"But he who for his livelihood teaches a portion only of the Veda, or also the Âṅgas of the Veda is called an Upâdhyâya."

The Pâkayajñas are seven, namely, (1) Aupâsanahomaḥ, (2) Vaiśvadevam, (3) Pârvanam Sthâlipâka, (4) Aṣṭakâ, (5) Mâsîrâddham, (6) Sarpabaliḥ, (7) Îśâna baliḥ.

YÂJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 35.

एकदेशमुपाध्याय ऋत्विग्यज्ञकृदुच्यते ।

एते मान्या यथापूर्वमेभ्यो माता गरीयसी ॥ ३५ ॥

एकदेशं Ekadeśam, one portion. उपाध्यायः Upâdhyāyaḥ, the teacher. ऋत्विक् Ritvik, the officiating priest. यज्ञकृत् Yajñakṛit, the performer of sacrifices. उच्यते Uchyate, is called. एते Ete, these. मान्याः Manyāḥ, worthy of respect. यथापूर्वं Yathâpūrvam, according to their order. एभ्यः Ebhyaḥ, of these. माता Mâtâ, the mother. गरीयसी Gariyasî, more to be honoured.

35. He who teaches a portion is an Upâdhyâya, and the performer of sacrifices is called *Āitvīj*. These are to be respected in their order. Of these, the mother is most to be honored.—35.

मिताक्षरा ॥

वेदस्यैकदेशं मन्त्रब्राह्मणयोरेकं अङ्गानि वा योऽध्यापयति स उपाध्यायः । यः पुनः पाकयज्ञादिकं वृतः करोति स ऋत्विक् । एतेच गुर्वाचार्योपाध्यायर्त्विजो यथापूर्वं यथाक्रमेण मान्याः पूज्याः । एभ्यः सर्वेभ्यो माता गरीयसी पूज्यतमा ॥ ३५ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

He who teaches one "portion" of the Vedas or one *Āṅga* or part of the Mantras (hymns) or Brâhmaṇas (the Vedic commentary) is called an Upâdhyâya. He again, who performs (the daily household) sacrifices (like) the Pākayajñas, etc., after being chosen thereto is a *Āitvīj*.

"These," viz., the Guru, the Âchârya, the Upâdhyâya, and the *Āitvīj*, are to be "respected," (honored) "in their order," i. e., in the order of the enumeration. "Among these," out of them all, the mother is the highest, "most to be honored."

BÂLAMBHATTA'S GLOSS.

Thus says Manu (II. 145 seq) :—

The teacher is ten times more venerable than a sub-teacher, (Upâdhyâyâ), the father, a hundred times more than the teacher, but the mother a thousand times more than the father.

Of him who gives natural birth and him who gives (the knowledge of) the Veda, the giver of the Veda is the more venerable father; for the birth for the sake of the Veda (insures) eternal (rewards) both in this (life) and after death.

A maternal aunt, the wife of maternal uncle, a mother-in-law, and a paternal aunt must be honoured like the wife of one's teacher.

(The feet of the) wife of one's brother, if she be of the same caste (varṇa) must be clasped every day, but (the feet of) wives of (other) paternal and maternal relatives need only be embraced on one's return from a journey.

[The period of studentship.]

मिताक्षरा ॥ वेदग्रहणार्थं ब्रह्मचर्यावधिमाह ।

The author now propounds the limit of Brahmacharya or studentship, while learning the Vedas.

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 36.

प्रतिवेदं ब्रह्मचर्यं द्वादशाब्दानि पञ्च वा ।

ग्रहणान्तिकमित्येके केशान्तश्चैव षोडशे ॥ ३६ ॥

प्रतिवेदं Prativēdam, for each Vedas. ब्रह्मचर्यम् Bramacharyam, the Brahmacharya. द्वादशाब्दानि Dvādaśābdāni, for twelve years. पञ्च Pañcha, five. वा Vā, or. ग्रहणान्तिकम् Grahāṇāntikam, till they are completely acquired. इत्येके Ityeke, some say. केशान्तः Keśāntaḥ, shaving of the hair. च एव Cha eva, and verily. षोडशे Ṣoḍaśe, in the sixteenth (year).

36. For each Vedas, the Brahmacharya should be for twelve years or five. Some say it should be till they are completely acquired. The shaving of the hair should take place in the sixteenth year.—36.

### मिताक्षरा ॥

यदा विवाहासंभवेन वेदानधीत्य वेदै वा वेदं वेति प्रवर्तते तदा 'प्रतिवेदं' वेदं वेदं प्रति ब्रह्मचर्यं पूर्वोक्तं द्वादशवर्षाणि कार्यम् । अशक्तौ पञ्च ग्रहणान्तिकमित्येके वर्णयन्ति । केशान्तः पुनः गोदानाख्यं कर्म गर्भादारभ्य षोडशे वर्षे ब्राह्मणस्य कार्यम् । एतच्च द्वादश-वार्षिके वेदव्रते बोद्धव्यं उत्तरस्मिन्पक्षे यथासंभवं द्रष्टव्यम् । राजन्यवैश्ययोस्तूपनयन-कालवत् द्वाविंशे चतुर्विंशे वा यथासंभवं द्रष्टव्यम् ॥ ३६ ॥

### MITĀKṢARĀ.

When marriage is not possible (owing to poverty, &c.) and the rule (Manu III. 2) "one should have studied all the Vedas or the two Vedas or one Veda" comes into operation, then for "each Veda," i. e., for every Veda separately, the above-mentioned Brahmacharya (studentship) must be performed for twelve years. In case of inability, five years (for each Veda): some say till the Vedas are not completely mastered.

"The shaving of the hair" also called the "godana" ceremony is to be performed in the sixteenth year of conception, for the Brāhmaṇa. This is to be understood as the rule, in the case of one, who has taken the vow of studying the Vedas for twelve years. In the other case, (the shaving ceremony might be performed) at any time which is convenient.

For the Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas this period of shaving is twenty-second and twenty-fourth years, respectively, on the analogy to their periods of Upanayana, or at any period that might be convenient.

### BĀLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Manu says (III. 2):—"A student who has studied in due order the three Vedas, or two, or even one only, without breaking the rules of studentship, shall enter the order of householders." [In III. 1., he says, "The vow of studying the three Vedas under a teacher must be kept for thirty-six years, or for half that time, or for a quarter, or until the student has perfectly learnt them."]

Manu II. 65:—"The ceremony called Keśānta (clipping the hair) is ordained for a Brāhmaṇa in the sixteenth year from conception, for Kṣatriya in the twenty-second, and for a Vaiśya two years later than that,"

मिताक्षरा ॥ उपनयनकालस्य परमावधिमाह ।

[The author now declares the maximum period for Upanayana.]

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 37.

आषोडशादाद्विंशाच्चतुर्विंशाच्च वत्सरात् ।

ब्रह्मक्षत्रविशां काल औपनायनिकः परः ॥ ३७ ॥

आषोडशात् Âṣoḍaśāt, up to the sixteenth. आद्विंशात् Âdvaiṃśāt, up to the twenty-second. आचतुर्विंशात् Âchaturvimsāt, up to the twenty-fourth. च Cha, and, वत्सरात् Vatsarāt, years. ब्रह्मक्षत्रविशाम् Brahma-Kṣatra-Viśām, for the Brâhmaṇas, Kṣatriya and Vaiśyas. कालः Kālāḥ, time or period. औपनायनिकः Aupanāyanikaḥ, of Upanayana. परः Parāḥ, maximum.

37. Up to sixteenth, twenty-second and twenty-fourth year is the maximum period of Upanayana for the Brâhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas and the Vaiśyas respectively.—37.

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 38.

अत ऊर्ध्वं पतन्त्येते सर्वधर्मबहिष्कृताः ।

सावित्रीपतिता ब्रात्या ब्रात्यस्तोमादृते क्रतोः ॥ ३८ ॥

अतः Atah, from that. ऊर्ध्वं Ūrdhvam, above, beyond. पतन्ति Patanti, fall. एते Ete, these. सर्वधर्मबहिष्कृताः Sarvadharmabahiṣkritāḥ, being excluded from all Dharmas. सावित्री पतिताः Sâvitṛi-patitāḥ, having fallen from Sâvitṛi. ब्रात्याः Vrâtyāḥ, (are called) vrâtyas, (become) outcastes. ब्रात्यस्तोमात् Vrâtyastomāt, called the Vrâtyastomâ. ऋते Rite, without. क्रतोः Kratoḥ, of sacrifice.

38. Above that they fall, being excluded from all Dharmas. Having fallen from Sâvitṛi they become Vrâtyas or outcastes, so long as they do not perform the sacrifice called Vrâtyastoma.—38.

मिताक्षरा ॥

आषोडशाद्वर्षात्षोडशवर्षं यावत् आद्विंशादाचतुर्विंशाद्वर्षाद् ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियविशां औपनायनिकः उपनयनसंबन्धी परः कालः नातः परमुपनयनकालोऽस्ति किंतु अत ऊर्ध्वं पतन्त्येते सर्वधर्मबहिष्कृताः । सर्वधर्मेष्वनधिकारिणो भवन्ति । सावित्रीपतिताः पतिताः सावित्रीका भवन्ति । सावित्रीदानयोग्या न भवन्ति । ब्रात्याः संस्कारहीनाश्च ब्रात्यस्तोमात्क्रतोर्विना कृते तु तस्मिन् उपनयनाधिकारिणो भवन्ति ॥ ३७ ॥ ३८ ॥

MITÂKṢARÂ.

Up to the sixteenth year, up to the twenty-second year and up to the twenty-fourth year are the maximum periods of Upanayana for the Brâhmaṇas, the Kṣatriyas, and the Vaiśyas, respectively. Beyond these, there

are no periods of Upanayana, but "above" these, they fall and "are excluded from all Dharmas," *i. e.*, they become incompetent to perform any ceremony, and become fallen from Sâvitṛi, *i. e.*, become unfit for receiving Sâvitṛi initiation.

"Vrâtyas" or "outcastes" are devoid of all sacraments; so long as they do not perform the Vrâtyastoma; performing which they again become entitled to Upanayana.

BÂLAMBHAṬṬA'S GLOSS.

Manu (II. 39) :—"The time for the Sâvitṛi initiation of a Brâhmaṇa does not pass until the completion of sixteenth year after conception, of a Kṣatriya until the completion of the twenty-second, and of a Vaiśya until the completion of the twenty-fourth. (40.) After those periods men of these three castes who have not received the sacrament at the proper time, become Vrâtyas (outcastes) excluded from Sâvitṛi initiation, and despised by the Aryâus."

मिताक्षरा ॥ आद्यान्त्रयो द्विजा इत्युक्तं तत्र हेतुमाह ।

*The author now gives the reason of his text "the first three are twice-born."*

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 39.

मातुर्यदग्रे जायन्ते द्वितीयं मौञ्जीबन्धनात् ।

ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियविशस्तस्मादेते द्विजाः स्मृताः ॥ ३९ ॥

मातुः Mātuh, from the mother. यत् Yat, that, because. अग्रे Agre, first. जायन्ते Jayante, are born द्वितीयं Dvitiyam, second time. मौञ्जीबन्धनात् Mauñjibandhanāt, from the binding of girdle. ब्राह्मणक्षत्रियविशः Brâhmaṇa-Kṣatriya-Viśah, the Brâhmaṇa, Kṣatriya, and Vaiśyas. तस्मात् Tasmāt, therefore. एते Ete, these. द्विजाः Dvijah, twice-born, Dvijas. स्मृताः Smṛitah, are called.

39. Because they are first born from the mother and the second time from the binding of sacred girdle, therefore, the Brahmanas, Kṣatriyas and the Vaiśyas are called Dwijas or the twice-born.—39.

मिताक्षरा ॥

मातुः सकाशात्प्रथमं जायन्ते मौञ्जीबन्धनात् द्वितीयं जन्म यस्मात्तस्मादेते ब्राह्मण-क्षत्रियवैश्या द्विजा उच्यन्ते ॥ ३९ ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

Their first birth is from the womb of the mother, the second birth takes place when the sacred girdle is bound round them at the time of initiation. Therefore, these Brâhmaṇas, Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas are called twice-born.

Notes :—Cf. Manu (II. 169) :—"According to the injunction of the revealed texts, the first birth of an Aryan is from his natural mother, the second happens on the tying of the

girdle of muñja grass, and the third on the initiation to the performance of a Śrauta sacrifice.

(II. 170). Among these three the birth which is symbolized by the investiture with the girdle of muñja grass, is his birth for the sake of the Veda; they declare that in that birth, the Sāvitrī verse is his mother and the teacher his father.

*The reward of the study of the Veda.*

**मिताक्षरा ॥ वेदग्रहणाध्ययनफलमाह ।**

The Author now tells the fruit of studying and acquiring the knowledge of the Vedas.

YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 40.

**यज्ञानां तपसां चैव शुभानां चैव कर्मणाम् ।**

**वेद एव द्विजातीनां निःश्रेयसकरः परः ॥ ४० ॥**

यज्ञानाम् Yajñānam, of sacrifices. तपसां Tapasām, of austerities. च एव Cha eva, and indeed. शुभानां Śubhānām, of good. चैव Chaiva, and verily. कर्मणाम् Karmaṇām, of works, deeds. वेदः Vedaḥ, the Veda. एव Eva, indeed, alone. द्विजातीनां Dvijatīnām, of the twice-born. निःश्रेयसकरः Niḥśreyasakaraḥ, agent of benefaction, the means of obtaining the highest good. परः Paraḥ, great, highest.

40. To the twice-born, the Vedas are the highest agent of benefaction (the means of attaining salvation) because (they all teach) sacrifices, austerities and good works.—40.

**मिताक्षरा ॥**

यज्ञानां श्रौतस्मार्तानां तपसां कायसन्तापरूपाणां चान्द्रायणादीनां शुभानां च कर्मणां उपनयनादिसंस्काराणां अवबोधकत्वेन वेद एव द्विजातीनां परो निःश्रेयसकरः मोक्षकरो नान्यः । वेद एवेति तन्मूलत्वेन स्मृतेरप्युपलक्ष्यार्थः ॥ ४० ॥

MITÂKṢARÂ.

Because the Vedas are the expounders of "sacrifices," Vedic and Smârta, of penances like Chândrâyana, &c., which are the (repentance or) torturing of the flesh, and of "good works" like the sacrament of Upanayana, &c., therefore they alone (and nothing else) are the highest agents of benefaction or the road to emancipation, for the twice-born classes. The Vedas being the source of Smritis, this applies to the Smritis, by reason of analogy or metonymy.

Having stated the fruits of studying and mastering the Vedas, the author now declares the fruits of that study which constitutes the optional duty called Brahmayajña.

*Note.*—Compare Manu II. 166 and 167. "Let a Brâhmana who desires to perform austerities constantly repeat the Veda, for the study of the Veda is declared to be in this world the highest austerity for a Brâhmana. Verily that twice-born man performs the highest austerity up to the extremities of his nails, who though wearing a garland, daily recites the Veda in private with the utmost of his ability.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 41.

मधुना पयसा चैव स देवांस्तर्पयेत् द्विजः ।

पितृन्मधुघृताभ्यां च ऋचोऽधीते च योऽन्वहम् ॥ ४१ ॥

मधुना Madhunā, with honey. पयसा Payasā, with milk. चैव Chaiva, and verily. सः Sah, he. देवान् Devān, Devas. तर्पयेत् Tarpayet, satisfies. द्विजः Dvijah, the twice-born. पितृन् Pitṛin, the Pitṛis, the manes. मधुघृताभ्यां Madhughṛitābhyām, with honey and clarified butter, ghee. च Cha, and. ऋचः Richah, hymns of the Rig-Veda. अधीते Adhite, reads. च Cha, and. यः Yah, who. अन्वहम् Anvaham, daily.

41. That twice-born who daily reads the *riks* (hymns of the Rig-Veda), satisfies the Devas with honey and milk and the *pitṛis* with honey and clarified butter.—41.

मिताक्षरा ॥ ग्रहणाध्ययनफलमुक्त्वेदानीं काम्यव्रतब्रह्मयज्ञाध्ययनफलमाह ।

Having stated the fruits of studying and mastering the Vedas, the author now declares the fruits of study which constitutes the optional duty called Brahmayajña.

YĀJNAVALKYA VERSE 42.

यजुंषि शक्तितोऽधीते योऽन्वहं स घृतामृतैः ।

प्रीणाति देवानाज्येन मधुना च पितृस्तथा ॥ ४२ ॥

यजुंषि Yajūṇṣi, Yajus. शक्तितः Śaktitah, to the best of ability. अधीते Adhite, reads, studies. यः Yah, who. अन्वहं Anvaham, daily. सः Sah, he. घृतामृतैः Ghṛitāmṛitaiḥ, with clarified butter and honey. प्रीणाति Pīṇāti, pleases. देवान् Devān, Devas. आज्येन Ājyena, with ghee. मधुना Madhunā, with honey. च Cha, and. पितृन् Pitṛin, Pitṛis. तथा Tathā, like.

42. He, who daily studies to the best of his ability the *Yajus* (hymns of the Yajurveda), pleases the Devas with clarified butter and nectar and the *pitṛis* with clarified butter and honey.—42.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 43.

स तु सोमघृतैर्देवांस्तर्पयेद्योऽन्वहं पठेत् ।

सामानि तृप्तिं कुर्याच्च पितॄणां मधुसर्पिषा ॥ ४३ ॥

सः Sah, he. तु Tu, but. सोमघृतैः Somaghṛitaiḥ, with the Soma juice and clarified butter, or ghee. देवान् Devān, the Devas. तर्पयेत् Tarpayet, pleases,

satisfied. यः Yaj, who. अन्वहं Anvaham, daily. पठेत् Paṭhet, reads, सामानि Sâmanî, the Sâman तृप्तिं Triptim, satisfaction. कुर्यात् Kuryât, may do. च Cha, and. पित्र्याम् Pitṛiṇām, of Pitṛis मधुसर्पिषा Madhusarpiṣa, with honey and clarified butter or ghee.

43. He, who daily reads the Saman, satisfies the Devas with Soma juice and clarified butter and pleases his *pitris* with honey and clarified butter.—43.

मिताक्षरा ॥

योऽन्वहं ऋचोऽधीते स मधुना पयसा च देवान् पितॄंश्च मधुघृताभ्यां तर्पयति ।  
यः पुनः शक्तितोऽन्वहं यजुष्यधीते स घृतामृतैर्देवान्पितॄंश्च मधुघृताभ्यां तर्पयति ।  
यस्तु सामान्यन्वहमधीते स सोमवृतैर्देवान् पितॄंश्च मधुसर्पिभ्यां प्रीणाति । ऋगादि-  
ग्रहणं सामान्येन ऋगादिमन्त्रप्राप्त्यर्थम् ॥ ४१ ॥ ४२ ॥ ४३ ॥

MITÂKṢARÂ.

He, who daily studies the *ṛiks*, satisfies the Devas with honey and milk and the *manes* with honey and clarified butter. He who daily reads the Yajus, so far as he can, satisfies the Devas with clarified butter and nectar and the ancestors with honey and clarified butter. He who daily studies the Sâmans, satisfies the Devas with *soma* juice and the *manes* with honey and clarified butter.

By the use of the words “*ṛiks*,” &c., it is intended to indicate generally the hymns of the Rig-Veda, &c.

[Compare Manu II. 104-106.—“He who desires to perform the ceremony of the daily recitation may even recite the Sâvitri near water, retiring into the forest, controlling his organ and concentrating his mind.

II. 107.—For him who, being pure and controlling his organs, during a year, daily recites the Vedas, according to the rule, that daily recitation will ever cause sweet and sour milk, clarified butter and honey to flow.”

Compare also Viṣṇu, III. 34-38.—“Now he who studies the hymns of the Rig-Veda regularly, feeds the *manes* with clarified butter; he who studies the Yajus texts, feeds them with honey. He who studies the Sâman melodies, feeds them with milk. He who studies the Atharva Veda, feeds them with meat. He who studies the Purâṇas, Itihâsas, Vedâṅgas and the Institutes of Sacred Law, feeds them with rice.]

Y. JNAVALKYA'S VERSE 44.

मेदसा तर्पयेद्देवानथर्वाङ्गिरसः पठन् ।

पितॄंश्च मधुसर्पिभ्यामन्वहं शक्तितो द्विजः ॥ ४४ ॥



मेदसा Medasā, with fat. तर्पयेत् Tarpayet, satisfies. देवान् Devān, the Devas. अथर्वङ्गिरसः Atharvāṅgirasah, the Atharva āṅgīrasa. पठन् Paṭhan, studying. पितृन् Pitṛin, the pitris च Cha, and मधुसर्पिर्भ्यां Madhusaṁpirbhyām, with honey and clarified butter or ghee. अन्वहं Anvaham, daily. शक्तितः Śaktitah, to the best of his ability. द्विजः Dvijah, twice-born.

44. The twice-born who daily studies the Atharva Āṅgīras to the best of his ability, satisfies the Devas with fat and the *pitris* with honey and clarified butter.—44.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 45

वाकोवाक्यं पुराणं च नाराशंसीश्च गाथिकाः ।

इतिहासांस्तथा विद्याः शक्त्याऽधीते हि योऽन्वहम् ॥४५॥

वाकोवाक्यम् Vākovākyam, Vedic texts in the form of questions and answers. पुराणम् Purāṇam, Purāṇas like Brāhma, etc. च Cha, here means the Dharma Śāstras of Manu, etc. नाराशंसीः Nārāśamsiḥ, the Mantras relating to Rudra Devatā. गाथिकाः Gāthikāḥ, the sacrificial songs *v. g.* songs relating to Indra, etc. इतिहासान् Itihāsān, as Mahabharata, etc. तथा Tathā, like that. विद्याः Vidyāḥ, Vidyā beginning with Vāruṇa, etc. शक्त्या Śaktyā, according to his best ability. अधीते Adhite, reads, studies. हि Hi, indeed. यः Yah, who. अन्वहं Anvaham, daily.

45. He who daily studies the Vākovākyam, the Purāṇas and Nārāśamsīs, the Gāthikās, the Itihāsas, and the Vidyās to the best of his ability.—45.

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 46.

मांसक्षीरौदनमधुतर्पणं स दिवौकसाम् ।

करोति तृप्तिं कुर्याच्च पितृणां मधुसर्पिषा ॥ ४६ ॥

मांसक्षीरौदनमधुतर्पणम् Māṁsa-kṣīraodana-madhu-tarpaṇam, satisfaction with meats, milk, boiled rice, and honey. सः Sah, he. दिवौकसाम् Divaukasām, of dwellers of Heaven. करोति Karoti, performs, does. तृप्तिं Triptim, satisfaction. कुर्यात् Kuryāt, may do. च Cha, and. पितृणाम् Pitṛiṇām, of Pitṛis. मधुसर्पिषा Madhusarpiṣā, with honey and clarified butter.

46. Satisfies the dwellers of heaven with meat, milk, boiled rice, and honey, and the *pitris* with honey and clarified butter.—46.

मिताक्षरा ॥

यः पुनः शक्तितोऽन्वहं अथर्वङ्गिरसोऽधीते स देवान्मेदसा पितॄन् च मधुसर्पिर्भ्यां तर्पयति । यस्तु वाकोवाक्यं प्रश्नोत्तररूपवेदवाक्यं पुराणं ब्राह्मादि । चकारान्मानवादि-

धर्म-शास्त्रम् । नाराशंसीश्च रुद्रदैवत्यान्मन्त्रान् । गाथाश्च यज्ञगाथा इन्द्रगाथाद्याः ।  
इतिहासान्महाभारतादीन् । विद्याश्च वारुण्याद्या विद्याः । शक्तितोऽन्वहमधीते स मांस-  
क्षीरौदनमधुभिर्देवान् पितॄंश्च मधुसर्पिर्भ्यो तर्पयति ॥ ४४ ॥ ४५ ॥ ४६ ॥

## MITÂKṢARÂ.

He who again daily studies as far as he can, the Atharva Âṅgīrasa, satisfies the Devas with fat, and the manes with honey and clarified butter.

“Vâkovâkyam,” the Vedic sayings in the form of questions and answers.

“Purâṇas,” such as Brâhma, &c.

The word “cha” “and” in the text indicates the Dharma-śâstras of Manu, &c.

“Nârâsaṁsis,” the mantras in honor of the God Rudra.

“Gâthâs,” such as Yajñyagâthâ. Indra gâthâ, &c.

“Itihâsa,” history, such as the Mahâbhârata, &c.

“The Vidyâs,” sciences, such as Vâruṇividya.

He who studies these to the best of his ability, satisfies the Devas with meat, milk, boiled rice and honey and the manes with honey and clarified butter.

## YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 47.

ते तृप्तास्तर्पयन्त्येनं सर्वकामफलैः शुभैः ।

यं यं क्रतुमधीतेऽसौ तस्य तस्याप्नुयात्फलम् ॥ ४७ ॥

त Te, they. तृप्ताः Triptâḥ, being satisfied. तर्पयन्ति Tarpayanti, satisfy. एनं Enam, him. सर्वकामफलैः Sarvakâmaphalaiḥ, with fruits of all desires. शुभैः Śubhaiḥ, with auspicious. यं यं Yam yam, whatever. क्रतुं Kratum, the portions of the Vedas which lay down the rules of sacrifice. अधीते Adhīte, studies असौ Asau, he. तस्य तस्य Tasya tasya, of that आप्नुयात् Âpnuyât, may get, may receive. फलम् Phalam, fruit.

47. They being satisfied satisfy him with the auspicious fruits of all his desires. Whatever portion he studies, even of that he receives the fruit.—47.

## YAJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 48.

त्रिविक्तपूर्णपृथिवीदानस्य फलमश्नुते ।

तपसो यत्परस्येह नित्यं स्वाध्यायवान् द्विजः ॥ ४८ ॥

त्रिः Triḥ, thrice. विक्तपूर्ण पृथिवीदानस्य Vittapūrṇa prithivīdānasya, of bestowing the earth full of treasure. फलम् Phalam, fruit. अश्नुते Aśnute enjoys. तपसः Tapasaḥ, of austerities, of Chandrâyaṇa, etc. यत् Yat, which. परस्य Parasya, of the highest. इह Iha, in this world. नित्यं Nityam, always. स्वाध्यायवान् Svādhyaya-van, who studies. द्विजः Dvijah twice-born.

48. The twice-born who studies daily enjoys the fruit of bestowing the earth full of treasure, and of the highest austerities.—48.

मिताक्षरा ॥

ते पुनस्तृप्ताः सन्तो देवाः पितरश्च एवं स्वाध्यायकारिणं सर्वकामफलैः शुभैरनन्योपधातलक्षणेस्तर्पयन्ति । प्रशंसार्थमाह । यस्य यस्य कृतोः प्रतिपादकं वेदैकदेशमन्वहमधीते तस्य तस्य कृतोः फलमाप्नोति । तथा वित्तपूर्णायाः पृथिव्याः त्रिः त्रिवारं दानस्य यत्फलं परस्य तपसश्चान्द्रायणादेर्यत्फलं तदपि नित्यं स्वाध्यायवान् प्राप्नोति । नित्यग्रहणं काम्यस्यापि सतो नित्यत्वज्ञापनार्थम् ॥ ४७ ॥ ४८ ॥

MITĀKṢARĀ.

“They,” the Devas and the Manes, being satisfied satisfy “him” the student, with the fruits of all his desires which are “auspicious,” not harmful to any one else.

The author has said all this as pauegyric on study. Whatever portion of the Vedas laying down methods of any sacrifice he studies daily, of that sacrifice he receives the fruit (*i. e.*, as if he had actually performed that sacrifice). Similarly, that fruit which is acquired by “thrice” three times, giving away the earth filled with treasures and that fruit which accrues from the performance of the highest austerities, such as Chândrâyana, &c., all these are acquired by him who studies daily.

By using the word “daily” it is meant to indicate that though this is an optional vow, yet it is a permanent duty (because on the non-performance of study there takes place sin).

मिताक्षरा ॥ एवं सामान्येन ब्रह्मचारिधर्मानभिधायानुना नैष्ठिकस्य विशेषमाह ।

Thus having spoken of the ordinary (general) duties of (all) Brahmachârins or students (whether temporary celibates or lifelong celibates) the author now speaks of the *special* duties of the naiṣṭhika Brahmachâri (a perpetual celibate.)

YĀJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 49.

नैष्ठिको ब्रह्मचारी तु वसेदाचार्यसन्निधौ ।

तदभावेऽस्य तनये पत्न्यां वैश्वानरेऽपि वा ॥ ४९ ॥

नैष्ठिकः Naiṣṭhikah, the Naiṣṭhika, one who remains a student up to his niṣṭhâ or death. ब्रह्मचारी Brahmachâri, the Brahmachâri or student. तु Tu, but. वसेत् Vaset, should live. आचार्यसन्निधौ Âchâryasannidhau, with the Âchârya, in the presence of the Âchârya. तदभावे Tadabhâve, in the absence of him (the Âchârya). अस्या Aśya, of his (the Âchârya). तनये Tanaye, with (his) son. पत्न्यां Patnyam, with (his) wife. वैश्वानरे Vaisvânare, with the fire: अपि Api, even. वा Vâ, or, only.

49.—The Naiṣṭhika Brahmachârî should live with his Âchârya, in the absence of the latter, with his son, or wife or even fire.—49.

BÂLAMBAHṬṬA'S GLOSS.

The preceding rules apply to all Brahmachârîs in general, whether Upakurvâna (or temporary) or Naiṣṭhika (lifelong celibates). This verse and the next declare the rules applicable to the Naiṣṭhika or perpetual celibate.

YÂJNAVALKYA'S VERSE 50.

अनेन विधिना देहं साधयन्विजितेन्द्रियः ।

ब्रह्मलोकमवाप्नोति न चेह जायते पुनः ॥ ५० ॥

अनेन Anena, in this विधिना Vidhiṇā, way. देहं Deham, body. साधयन् Sādhayan, perfecting. If the reading be. सादयन् then it means finishing. Vijñāneśvara evidently reads सादयन् 'finishing' because he explains it by Kṣapayan. विजितेन्द्रियः Vijiṭendriyaḥ, subduing (his) senses. ब्रह्मलोकम् Brahmalokam, the region of Brahmā. Immortality. अवाप्नोति Avāpnoti, (he) attains. न Na, not. च Cha, indeed. इह Iha, in this world. जायते Jayate, is born. पुनः Punah, again.

50.—In this way destroying the body and subduing his senses he attains the region of Brahmā and is not born here again.—50.

मिताक्षरा ॥

अनेनोक्तप्रकारेणात्मानं निष्ठां उत्क्रान्तिकालं नयतीति नैष्ठिकः स यावज्जीवमाचार्य-समीपे वसेत् । न वेदग्रहणकालोत्तरं स्वतन्त्रो भवेत् । तदभावे तत्पुत्रसमीपे तदभावे तद्भार्यासमीपे तदभावे वैश्वानरेपि । अनेनोक्तविधिना देहं साधयन् क्षपयन् विजितेन्द्रियः इन्द्रियजये विशेषप्रयत्नवान् । ब्रह्मचारी ब्रह्मलोकममृतत्वमाप्नोति । कदाचिदिह न पुनर्जायते । इति ब्रह्मचारिप्रकरणम् ॥ ४९ ॥ ५० ॥

MITÂKṢARĀ.

In this way the Naiṣṭhika he who regulates himself as a student till the time of his niṣṭhā or death should live all his life in the presence of his Âchârya (preceptor) he should not be independent, after the acquisition of the Vedas.

In the absence of the Âchârya he should live in the presence of his son; in the absence of the latter, in the presence of his wife; in her absence, even before fire.

'In this way,' by the above-mentioned method, "destroying" (finishing) the body and subduing the senses ; i.e., taking special care to conquer his senses, that Brahmachârî attains the "region of Brahmā" or immortality and is never again born here.

## BĀLAMBHATṬA'S GLOSS.

The word "Naiṣṭhika" is derived from निष्ठ + क्त्वा (कालान् क्त्वा Pāṇini IV. 3. 11.) As says Manu (II. 242—245) :—

"He who desires incomparable bliss (in heaven) shall not dwell during his whole life in (the house of) a non-Brahminical teacher, nor with a Brāhmaṇa who does not know the whole Vedas and the Aṅgas. (243) But if (a student) desires to pass his whole life in the teacher's house, he must diligently serve him, until he is freed from his body. (244.) A Brāhmaṇa who serves his teacher till the dissolution of his body, reaches forthwith the eternal mansion of Brahmā. (247.) A perpetual student must, if his teacher dies, serve his son, provided he be endowed with good qualities, or his widow, or his sapinḍa, in the same manner as the teacher. (248.) Should none of these be alive, he must serve the sacred fire, standing by day, and sitting during the night, and thus finish his life. (249.) A Brāhmaṇa who thus passes his life as a student without breaking his vow, reaches after death the highest abode and will not be born again in this world."

The method of serving fire is given by Hārīta, Śaṅkha, Likhita, and Yama.

Vasiṣṭha gives the following rules :—" 4. A perpetual student shall serve his teacher until death ; 5. and in case the teacher dies he shall serve the sacred fire. 6. For it has been declared in the veda, ' the fire is thy teacher'. 7. A student shall bridle his tongue ; 8. He shall eat in the fourth, sixth, or eighth hour of the day. 9. He shall go out in order to beg. 10. He either may wear all his hair tied in a knot or keep merely a lock on the crown of his head tied in a knot, showing the other parts of the head. 17. Let him bathe three times a day " (Va., chapter VII.)

The text of Dakṣa that declares that a Brahmachārin should bathe once a day applies to ordinary students and not to a perpetual celibate.

## Alphabetical Index of the Verses.

	PAGE.
अत ऊर्ध्वं पतन्त्येते...I, 2, 38	95
अनेन विधिना देहं...I, 2, 50	103
अन्तर्जानुः शुचौ देशे...I, 2, 18	63
अहन्येकादशे नाम...I, 2, 12	23
आदिमध्यावसानेषु ...I, 2, 30	87
आहूतश्चाप्यधीयीत...I, 2, 27	82
आषोडशादाद्वाविंशत्...I, 2, 27	95
इज्याचार दमाहिंसा...I, 2, 8	17
उपनीय गुरुः शिष्यं...I, 2, 15	59
एकदेशमुपाध्यायः...I, 2, 35	92
एवमेनः शमं याति...I, 2, 13	57
कनिष्ठादेशिन्यंगुष्ठ...I, 2, 19	64
कृतज्ञा द्रोहिमेधावि...I, 2, 28	82
कृताग्नि कार्यो भुञ्जीत . I, 2, 31	88
गर्भाधानमृतौ पुंसः...I, 2, 11	23
गर्भाष्टमेऽष्टमे वाब्दे...I, 2, 14	58
गायत्रीं शिरसा सार्धं...I, 2, 23	71
गृहीतशिश्नोश्चात्याय...I, 2, 17	62
चत्वारो वेद धर्मज्ञाः...I, 1, 9	18
ततोऽभिवादयेद्वृद्धान्...I, 2, 26	79
त्रिः प्राश्यायेप द्विरुन्मृज्य...I, 2, 20	65
ते तृप्तास्तर्पयन्त्येनं...I, 2, 47	101
त्रिविक्तपूर्णं पृथिवी...I, 2, 48	101
दण्डाजिनोपवीतानि...I, 2, 29	83
दिवा संध्यासु कर्णस्थ...I, 2, 16	61
देशे काल उपायेन...I, 1, 6	14
नैष्ठिको ब्रह्मचारीतु...I, 2, 49	102
पराशरन्यास शङ्ख...I, 1, 5	11
पुराणन्याय मीमांसा...I, 1, 31	7
प्रतिवेदं ब्रह्मचर्यं...I, 2, 36	93
प्राणानायम्य संप्रोक्ष्य...I, 2, 24	72
ब्रह्मक्षत्रियविट्शूद्राः...I, 1, 10	21

			PAGE
ब्रह्मचर्ये स्थितेनैक...	1, 2, 32	...	89
मधुना पयसा चैव...	I, 2, 41	...	98
मधुमांसाञ्जनोच्छिष्ट...	I, 2, 33	...	90
मन्वत्रि विष्णु हारीत...	I, 1, 4	...	11
मातुर्यदग्रे जायन्ते...	I, 2, 39	...	96
मांसक्षीरौदनमधु...	I, 2, 46	...	100
मिथिलास्थः सयोगीन्द्रः...	I, 1, 2	...	6
मेदसा तर्पयेद्देवान्...	I, 2, 44	...	99
यजूंषि शक्तितोऽधीते...	I, 2, 42	...	98
यज्ञानां तपसां चैव...	I, 2, 40	...	97
योगीश्वरं याज्ञवल्क्यं संपूज्य...	I, 1, 1	...	3
वाकोवाक्यं पुराणं...	I, 2, 45	...	100
श्रुतिःस्मृतिः सदाचारः...	I, 1, 7	...	16
स गुरुयः क्रियाः कृत्वा...	I, 2, 34	...	91
सतु सोमघृतैर्देवान्...	I, 2, 43	...	98
सन्ध्यां प्राक् प्रातरेवं हि...	I, 2, 25	...	72
स्नानमब्दैव तैर्मन्त्रैः...	I, 2, 22	...	68
हृत्कण्ठतालुगाभिस्तु...	I, 2, 21	...	66

# INDEX.

	Page.
Achamana and its method ... ..	63, 65
Adoption... ..	28
Alphabet, the first learning of the ... ..	55
Annaprâsana ... ..	24, 43
Arghya Mantras ... ..	69, 70
Avivâdana, The ... ..	79
Begging, The forms of ... ..	87
Birthday anniversary, The ... ..	43, 45
Birth rite ... ..	27
Brahmachâri, The Brâhmaṇa—may eat at Sradha ... ..	90
"    Things prohibited to ... ..	"
Castes, The four (verse 10) ... ..	21
Chudâkaraṇa or the tonsure ... ..	24, 45
Definitions of the Guru, Âchârya, Upâdhyâya, Ritvij ... ..	91, 92
Dharma, The efficient cause of ... ..	14
"    The fourteen sources of ... ..	7
"    The six kinds of ... ..	5
Ear, Boring of the ... ..	43
Four aims of life, The ... ..	1
Garbhâdhâna ... ..	23
Gâyatrî, Japa of the ... ..	73
"    the Study of the ... ..	60
"    the various meanings of the ... ..	76
"    with its Vyâhritis and Śīras, The ... ..	75
Grihya-Sûtras on Pûmsavana and Simantonnayan, The ... ..	49, 55
Guru, duties of the ... ..	59
"    The worship of the ... ..	81
Homa ceremony and its Mantras, The ... ..	77
Husbands, Rules for—of pregnant women ... ..	27
Initiation, Auspicious stars for ... ..	67
Jâtakarma ... ..	24, 27
Mantrâchaman, The ... ..	74
Mârjana Mantras ... ..	69
Nakṣatras and Names Table, The ... ..	42
Name, The Secret ... ..	41
Naming Ceremony, The ... ..	24, 40
Niṣkraman, The ... ..	24, 42
Pâka yajña, The ... ..	92
Painless delivery ceremony ... ..	26
Prâṇâyâma ... ..	72
Pûmsavana ... ..	23, 25, 43
Purâṇas, the authority of the ... ..	11
"    the eighteen ... ..	8
"    the two Bhâgavat ... ..	10



	Page.
Purification, the rules of personal ... ..	61
Sacraments ... ..	22, 24
„ the utility of ... ..	57
Sacrifice, the fire ... ..	88
Sages; the question of the ... ..	3
Sandhyâ ... ..	68
Saṣṭhi pûjâ ... ..	32 to 40
Sikhâ, the ... ..	47
Simantonnayana ... ..	24, 52
Smritis, the list of ... ..	11
Student, the dress, the staff and the qualifications, and sacred thread of	83 to 85
„ perpetual ... ..	102
Studentship, the period of ... ..	93
Study, methods of ... ..	82
Sûrya arghya ... ..	69
Territorial jurisdiction, The ... ..	6
Tilaka ... ..	70
Twice-born, The (verse 10) ... ..	21
„ defined ... ..	96
Upanayana, Âpastamba on ... ..	48
„ the time of ... ..	58
Upapurâṇas, The ... ..	11
Upaveśana ... ..	43
Vedic study, the reward of ... ..	97
Vrâtya defined ... ..	95
Vijñâneśvara's salutation ... ..	1
„ foreword ... ..	2
Viśvarupa's commentary referred to ... ..	2
Women, rules for pregnant ... ..	26

# THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE HINDUS.

---

Professor MaxMuller rendered an important service to the cause of comparative theology by the publication of the "Sacred Books of the East." The 49 volumes in that series represent the most important scriptures of the principal nations of Asia. Recognised as the Prince of European Sanskrit scholars, it was natural that Professor MaxMuller should have paid special attention to the sacred books of the Hindus. Of the 49 volumes, 21 are translations of the Sanskrit works. But still some of the most important sacred books of the Hindus have not been published in that series. The Vedas, the Brāhmanas, the Upaniṣads, the six schools of philosophy, the Aṅgas of the Vedas, the Śrauta and Kalpa-sūtras, the Smritis, the Epics, the Purāṇas, and also the Tantras which constitute these sacred books of the Hindus have most of them not appeared in MaxMuller's series.

It is the duty of every faithful and true votary of Hinduism to do all in his power to make known the contents of his sacred books to the world at large and to his fellow brethren in faith in India. It is not too much to say that a very large number of English-educated Hindus, unacquainted with Sanskrit, possess very little knowledge of their sacred scriptures. The published translations are in most cases too costly to be purchased by the English-educated Hindu of average means. There are not many public and circulating libraries where works on Hinduism are kept for reference. So, while the Christian and the Mohamadan are well acquainted with their religious scriptures, the Hindu alone is ignorant of his sacred books.

To remove this want, it is proposed to publish the original texts of the sacred books together with their English translations. A list of the works already taken in hand is given below. One part of 100 pages or so much as will complete a book or a chapter will be published every month.

The subscription rate for those who subscribe to the complete series is one rupee per 100 pages, royal octavo. They will get 1,200 pages in a year for which they have to pay Rs. 12 exclusive of postage.

The purchasers of separate parts or volumes will get it at the rate Rs. 1-8 per part of 100 pages.

This undertaking can be successful only if it be patronised by the educated public of India.

For further particulars write to—

**The Manager, PANINI OFFICE,**

**BHUVANESVARI ASRAMA,**

**Bahadurganj, ALLAHABAD.**

## JUST OUT.

### 1. The Sacred Books of the Hindus. Vol. I.

The Isa, Kena, Kaṭha, Prasna, Muṇḍaka, and Māṇḍuka Upanishads with Madhva's commentary translated into English with copious explanatory notes by Sris Chandra Vasu. Cloth bound, silver letters. Price 5 Rupees.

The *Modern Review*, the best Indian monthly, writes:—

“Panini Office has now undertaken the publication of the Sacred Books of the Hindus. This series, when completed, will be as useful as Max Muller's ‘Sacred Books of the East.’ It is a great undertaking and we wish it every success. This series is recommended to the readers of the *Modern Review*, who, we hope, will patronise the publication by their subscribing to it.”

The *Indian Mirror*, the well-known oldest daily of Calcutta, in its issue of Saturday, the 18th September, 1909, writes:—

“The Panini Office, Allahabad, is to be congratulated on the production of this sumptuous volume of the six well-known Upanishads which have been published with the original text, Sanskrit—English vocabulary of all the words in the text in their *Pada* form, English translation of the text and Madhva's Commentary, together with copious explanatory notes by the translator, Babu Sris Chandra Vasu, the well-known Sanskrit scholar of European and American reputation. Madhva was the founder of the Dvaita school of the Vedanta philosophy, and it is for the first time that his interpretation of the Upanishads has been made known to the English-reading public. The translation has been excellently made. It is readable and not wooden-legged which unhappily is often the case with translation by European Sanskrit scholars who, moreover, do not thoroughly understand the meaning of Sanskrit phrases, instances of which have been given by Professor S. R. Bhandarkar in the pamphlet which he wrote about three years ago. We recommend this new undertaking of the Panini Office to our educated countrymen for patronage, for it is an attempt to make the treasures of Hindu thought buried in Sanskrit, accessible to English-knowing public; and hence it deserves every possible encouragement.”

The *Indian People* of Allahabad in its issue of 23rd September, 1909, writes in a leading article:—

The publication of the Sacred Books of the Hindus marks a new era in Indian scholarship. The volume before us bears evidence of great and scrupulous labour in making the philosophy of the Dvaita school of Vedantic thought known to the English reading public. Till the publication of the volume under review the knowledge of Madhva's commentary on the Upanishads was confined to a few learned Pandits principally of the South, the land of birth and labour of that philosopher.

The learned translator deserves our best thanks for his sparing no pains in elucidating Madhva's commentary with copious explanatory notes. He has been the pioneer in the field and as such his task has been by no means easy. It is preposterous to expect a literal translation of Sanskrit philosophical works while rendering word meanings only will kill the sense of the original or make it appear ludicrous. Dr. George Thibaut who is at present perhaps the greatest European Sanskritist living rightly observes in the introduction to his translation of the Vedanta Sūtras with the commentary of Ramanuja, published in the Sacred Books of the East:—

“The present translation of the Sribhāshya claims to be faithful on the whole, although I must acknowledge that I have aimed rather at making it intelligible and, in a certain sense, readable than scrupulously accurate. If I had to re-write it, I should feel inclined to go even further in the same direction. Indian Philosophy would, in my opinion, be more readily and widely appreciated than it is at present, if the translators of philosophical works had been some-

what more concerned to throw their versions into a form less strange and repellent to the western reader than literal renderings from technical Sanskrit must needs be in many passages. I am not unaware of the peculiar dangers of the plan now advocated, among which the most obvious is the temptation it offers to the translator of deviating from the text more widely than regard for clearness would absolutely require. And I am conscious of having failed in this respect in more than one instance. In other cases I have no doubt gone astray through an imperfect understanding of the author's meaning. The fact is, that as yet the time has hardly come for fully adequate translations of comprehensive works of the type of the *Sribhashya*, the authors of which wrote with reference, in many cases tacit, to an immense and highly technical philosophical literature which is only just beginning to be studied, and comprehended in part, by European scholars."

Dr. Thibaut has grown grey in the study of Indian philosophy and hence knows and understands fully the peculiar difficulties of the translation of Sanskrit philosophical works. The merits of the volume before us are rather enhanced by the course pursued by the worthy translator. He has not committed any fault by giving paraphrases of passages which would render little sense if their literal meanings had been given. The well-known Hindi scholar, the Revd. Mr. Edwin Greaves of Benares, very truly observes in his Notes on the grammar of the *Ramayan* of Tulsī Das that, "In English it is reserved to a comic paper to designate Mr. Gladstone as Mr. Merry Pebble." Philosophical works have to deal with serious subjects and so should not partake of the character of comic papers by rendering literal translations of such Sanskrit words as "horse faced," "jay-bird throated" &c., which are in the original treated as proper names of the Lord Vishnu or Siva.

We strongly recommend this publication to the patronage of the reader for it makes him understand the principles of Hinduism better than in works written by Europeans who if not unsympathetic either fail to thoroughly grasp the meaning of the original or trying to be literal and accurate make their translations unintelligible.

Considering the merits and get up of the volume before us its price of five rupees is very moderate.

Vol. II.—*Yājñavalkya Smṛiti* with the commentary *Mitākṣarā* and notes from the gloss, *Bālabhāṭṭi*, translated into English with copious explanatory notes by Sris Chandra Vasu, published in monthly parts of 100 pages each. This work is indispensable to Indian lawyers of those parts of India where Hindu Law according to the *Mitākṣarā* School is administered. Annual subscription Twelve Rupees and twelve annas, inclusive of postage.

Part I just out *Mitākṣharā* with *Balambhatti*, two chapters.

## CUR PATRONS.

The following Governments and Native States have encouraged the publication by subscribing to it:—

- (1) The Government of Madras.
- (2) H. H. the Maharaja of Travancore.
- (3) H. H. the Maharaja of Mysore.
- (4) H. H. the Maharaja of Indore.
- (5) H. H. the Maharaja of Kolhapur.
- (6) H. H. the Maharaja of Jodhpur.
- (7) H. H. the Maharaja of Rewah.
- (8) H. H. the Maharaja of Kurundwad.
- (9) His Excellency the Dewan Sahib of Indore.
- (10) The Archæological Department of Kashmir, &c., &c.

# WORKS UNDER PREPARATION.

## I.—THE UPANIṢADS.

- (1) *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, A study by Babu Purnendu Narain Sinha, M.A., B.L.
- (2) *Bṛihadâraṇyaka* with the great Vṛitti of Suresvarâchârya by Pandit Mahadeva Śâstri, B.A., M.R.A.S., Curator, Government Oriental Library, Mysore.
- (3) *Taittiriya Upaniṣad* with *Madhva Bhâṣya* by Pandit Chhote Lal Bhârgava, B.A.

## II. SIX SCHOOLS OF HINDU PHILOSOPHY.

- (1) The *Vedânta sūtras*, in ten volumes, (a) Śankarâ's commentary with the gloss *Bhāmati*, (b) Râmânuja's commentary, (c) *Madhva's* commentary (*Pûṇaprajña-Darśana*), by Mr. Subba Rao, M.A. (d) *Vijñāna Bhikṣu's* commentary (*Vijñānāmṛita*), (e) *Valla-bhâchârya's* commentary (*Anubhâṣya*), (f) *Baladeva's* commentary (*Govinda-bhâṣya*), (g) *Śrīkantha's* commentary (*Saiva-bhâṣya*), (h) *Nimbârka's* commentary (*Vedânta pârījâta-saurabha*, with the gloss of Keśava Kâśmiri Bhattachârya), (j) *Bhâskara's* commentary, (k) and a new commentary by Babu Śrīśa Chandra Vasu.
- (2) *Pûrva Mimâṃsâ*, with a new commentary in English by Professor Gaṅgâ Nâth Jhâ, M.A., D. Lett.
- (3) *Nyâya*, with a new commentary by Mahâmahopâdhyâya Professor Satish Chandra Vidyabhusana, M.A., Ph. D.
- (4) *Sânkhya*, by Principal P. T. Srinivasa Iyenger, M.A.
- (5) *Yoga*, by Mr. Râm Prasâd, M.A.
- (6) *Vaiśeṣika*, by Babu Nanda Lâla Sinha, M.A., B.L.
- (7) *Sândilya*, and (8) *Nârada Bhakti Sūtras* by Babu Manmatha Nath Pâl, B.A., B.L.

## III.—SMRITIS.

*Yâjñavalkya Smṛiti*, with the commentary *Mitâksharâ* and notes from the gloss called *Bâlambhatti*, by Babu Śrīśa Chandra Vasu.

## IV.—VEDÂNGAS.

- (1) *Vyâkaraṇa*, (2) *Śikṣâ*, (3) *Chhandas*, (4) *Kalpa*, by Babu Śrīśa Chandra Vasu. (5) *Nirukta*, or *Yâska's* comments on *Nighantu* with critical notes and translation into English by Pandit Hiranand Śâstri, M.A., M.O.L. (Pun.); M. R. A. S. (Lond.)
- (6) *Jyotiṣa*, by Professor Nalinbihâri Mitra, M.A.

## V.—PURÂNAS.

- (1) *Vâyu Purâna* with critical and historical notes and translation into English by Babu Bijaya Chandra Mazumdar, B.A., B.L., M.R.A.S. (Lond.) (2) *Devi Bhâgavata*, by Prof. Nalinbihâri Mitra, M.A. (3) *Adhyatma Râmâyana*, by Pandit Śrīkrishṇa Josi.

## VI.—UPA-VEDAS.

*Suśruta*, by Major B. D. Basu, I. M. S.

*Śilpa-Sâstra*, by Dr. A. K. Coomâraswâmy, D. sc. (Lond.), &c.

## The Sacred Books of the Hindus.

(The following article appeared in the *Hindu of Madras* and the *Indian Mirror of Calcutta* of the 12th March and the *Indian People* of Allahabad of the 14th March 1909.)

### COMMUNICATED.

Pāṇinî was the greatest grammarian the world has produced. Salâtur, identified with the present Lâhaur in the Yusufzai valley by Sir Alexander Cunningham, was the place of birth of this immortal grammarian. In the time of Hiouen Tsang's visit to Yusufzai valley, it was known as Udyana or garden of India. Salâtur was also a prosperous town. But to-day it is an obscure and deserted village in the North-Western Frontier Province.

The Pāṇinî office was established nearly two decades ago to commemorate the name of the great grammarian by publishing with copious explanatory notes and commentaries his Sûtras or aphorisms in eight books called Aṣṭādhyāyî of Pāṇinî. Mr. Sris Chandra Vasu did this in a manner which elicited the admiration of the leading Sanskrit scholars of all countries. The opinions of some of those scholars are given below :—

*The Right Hon'ble F. Max Muller, Oxford, 9th February, 1892.*—  
“\* \* \* From what I have seen of it it will be a very useful work. What should I have given for such a work forty years ago when I puzzled my head over Pāṇinî Sûtras and the Commentaries. \* \* I hope you may succeed in finishing your work.”

*The Right Hon'ble F. Max Muller, Oxford, 30th April, 1899.*—“\* \* Allow me to congratulate you on your successful termination of Pāṇinî's Grammar. It was a great undertaking, and you have done your part of the work most admirably. I say once more what should I have given for such an edition of Pāṇinî when I was young, and how much time would it have saved me and others. Whatever people may say no one knows Sanskrit, who does not know Pāṇinî.”

*Professor T. Jolly, Ph. D., Wurzburg (Germany), 23rd April, 1893.*—“\* \* Nothing could have been more gratifying to me no doubt, than to get hold of a trustworthy translation of Pāṇinî's Aṣṭādhyāyî, the standard work of Sanskrit literature, and I shall gladly do my best to make this valuable work known to lovers and students of the immortal literature of ancient India in this country.”

*Professor W. D. Whitney, New Haven, U. S. A., 17 June, 1893.*—  
“\* \* The work seems to me to be very well planned and executed, doing credit to the translator and publisher. It is also, in my opinion, a very valuable undertaking as it does to give the European student of the native grammar more help than he can find anywhere else. It ought to have a good sale in Europe (and correspondingly in America.)”

*Professor V. Fausbol, Copenhagen, 15th June, 1893.*—“\* \* It appears to me to be a splendid production of Indian industry and scholarship and I value it particularly on account of the extracts from the *Kasika*.”

*Professor Dr. R. Pischel, Halle (Saals), 27th May, 1893.*—“\* I have gone through it and find it an extremely valuable and useful book, all the more so as there are very few Sanskrit scholars in Europe who understand Pāṇinî.”

\* \* \* \* \*

The next great undertaking of the Pāṇinî office was the publication of the *Siddhanta Kaumudî* of Bhaṭṭojî Dikṣit. This is a

standard work on Sanskrit grammar, and Sanskrit scholars spend at least a dozen years in mastering its intricacies. Mr. Sris Chandra Vasu deserves the best thanks of all Sanskritists for making Sanskrit grammar easy by editing and translating with explanatory notes Bhaṭṭojī Dīkṣit's Siddhānta Kaumudī. It is a voluminous work of 2,400 pages, royal octavo. It may be mentioned that the Oriental Translation Fund of England advertised about three quarters of a century ago as under preparation the English translation of the Siddhānta Kaumudī by Professor Horace Hayman Wilson. But perhaps he found the work too laborious for him, for the advertised translation was never published.

**The Daily Practice of the Hindus**—a new edition of which is in the press—is a work from the pen of Mr. Sris Chandra Vasu and it is a very useful publication. It is used as a Text-Book in the Central Hindu College, Benares. In reviewing this work in the *Modern Review*, January 1909 and the *Ceylon National Review*, February 1908, the well known Dr. A. K. Coomaraswamy, D. Sc. (London) wrote :—

“This unpretentious little volume is one of quite remarkable interest and importance. For the first time it is made easy for the outsider to understand, from an actual acquaintance, with the daily ritual of a devout Hindu of the old school, the meaning, the method and the depth of Hindu spiritual culture.

“We strongly recommend this little volume to all interested in mental culture, or who wish to know more of Hinduism as it really is.”

**A Catechism of Hinduism** by the above named author is another well known publication of the Pāninī office. The 2nd edition of this work is also ready for the press. “An Easy introduction to Yoga philosophy,” Śiva Samhitā “Vedānta Tatvatraya,” “Three Truths of Theosophy,” Students edition of “Isa, Kena and Kathopanīśads” of which also Mr. Sris Chandra Vasu is the author have been published by the Pāninī office.

The Pāninī office has published cheap reprints in two volumes of the English and the Bengali works of the celebrated Hindu Reformer, Rajah Ram Mohan Roy and also the *Private Journal* of the Marquess of Hastings. It also stands publisher to the *Folk-Tales of Hindustan*, by Shaikh Chilli, reprinted from the “*Modern Review*.” Regarding these tales The “*Review of Reviews*” of London for October, 1907 wrote “The ‘*Modern Review*’ contains month by month stories of a type that recall the delightful romances of the Arabian Nights. In the September number Shaikh Chilli tells the story of Prince Mahbub which vies with the stories of Princess Scheherzadi.”

Pāninī office has now undertaken the publication of the “*Sacred Books of the Hindus*.” In the prospectus it is stated that “while the Christians and the Mahomedans are well acquainted with their Religious Scriptures, the Hindu alone is ignorant of his Sacred Books.”

“To remove this want, it is proposed to publish the original text of the Sacred Books together with their English translation.

“The subscription for the whole work is Re. 1 per 96 pages, royal octavo.....For further particulars write to the Manager, Pāninī office, Allahabad.”

We wish the undertaking every success and recommend our readers to patronise the publication by their subscribing to it.

# The Siddhanta Kaumudi

Or Panini's Grammatical Aphorisms as arranged & explained

By BHATTOJI DIKSITA

Sanskrit Text and English Translation

By SRISA CHANDRA VASU AND VAMANA DASA VASU.

Completed in three Volumes in 2,000 pages Royal 8vo.

## CONTENTS.

VOLUME I.—Nouns and Substantives, pages 1028.

Do. II—Part I. Verbs and their Conjugation, pages 713.

Do. II— „ II. Kridanta or making of nouns from roots, pp. 408.

Do. III—Vaidika Grammar, pages 247.

It contains 4,000 Sûtras of Pāṇini, 900 Sûtras of Sākatāyana (Uṇādi), 200 Sûtras on accent (Phit Sûtras), 2,000 verbal roots and their conjugation incorporating the whole of the Mādhaviya Dhātuvṛtti with copious explanatory extracts from Kāśika Mahābhāṣya, Tattvabodhini, Manoramā, &c., &c.

Indian rate, exclusive of postage, Rs. 45.

Foreign rate, exclusive of postage, £ 3.

N. B.—Upto 31st December, 1909 the book will be sold for 30 Rs.

## Opinions of Distinguished Professors of Sanskrit.

*Mahamahopadhyaya Pandit Shirakumar\*Sastry, (Benares)—*

इङलिशभाषया श्रीयुतश्रीशचन्द्रवसुधृतस्य सिद्धान्तकौमुदी व्याख्यानस्य समीक्षणमिङलिशभाषानभिज्ञेन मया यथावत् कर्तुं नाशकि । परं “यथार्थत्वेनैव सिद्धे पुनः सादृश्यग्रहणं गुणभूतेऽपि सादृश्ये यथा स्यादिति” पङ्क्तेः, “अमुतात् किम् पहि सुस्रोता अत्र स्नाहि प्लुतस्यासिद्धत्वादतः परोऽयमिति” पङ्क्तेश्च भावं मया पृष्टेन केनचित् तद्भाषाभिज्ञेनैतद् ग्रन्थमवलोक्य प्रकाशितमाशयमाकर्ण्य परमं सन्तोषं प्राप्य स्थालीपुलाकन्यायेनेदं व्याख्यानं सिद्धान्तकौमुद्या यथास्थिताशयप्रकाशकन्तज्जिज्ञासूनां परमोपकारकञ्चास्तात्यध्यवस्यति काशीस्थो महामहोपाध्यायः पण्डितशिवकुमारशर्ममिश्रः ।

*Mahamahopadhyaya Pandit Kailas Chandra Siromoni, (Benares)*

अहमिङ्गलभाषानभिज्ञः । इङ्गल भाषायामतिव्युत्पन्नेन श्रीयुतेन वावुश्रीशचन्द्रवसुना इङ्गलभाषया सिद्धान्तकौमुद्या व्याख्यानं कृतं यत् तत् दृष्ट्वा तदर्थग्रहीतुं न शक्नोऽस्मि । केनचित् तद्भाषाभिज्ञेन पाठयित्वाऽर्थमुपलभ्य व्याख्यातुर्व्युत्पत्तिं विवेच्य सिद्धान्तकौमुद्या अर्थजिज्ञासूनामनेन ग्रन्थेन विशेषफललाभो भविष्यतीति सम्भावये इति । महामहोपाध्यायः शिरोमण्युपनामा श्रीकैलासचन्द्रशर्मा ।

Index to the Sûtras of Pāṇini, Dhātupāṭha, Uṇādi and Phit Sûtras.

Price one rupee and eight annas only.



# THE AṢṬĀDHYAYĪ OF PĀṆINĪ

Complete in 1,682 pages, Royal Octavo:

*Containing Sanskrit Sūtras and Vrittis with notes and Explanations in English, based on the celebrated Commentary called the Kās'ika.*

## PRICE FOR THE COMPLETE WORK.

Indian ...	...	...	Rs. 45 0 0
Foreign ...	...	...	£ 3 0 0

# FOLK-TALES OF HINDUSTAN

BY

SHAIKH CHILLI.

REPRINTED FROM THE MODERN REVIEW.

## REGARDING THESE TALES

The REVIEW OF REVIEWS of London for October, 1907, wrote :—

“The *Modern Review* contains month by month stories of a type that recall the delightful romances of the Arabian Nights. In the September number Shaikh Chilli tells the story of Prince Mahbub which vies with the stories of Princess Scheherzadi.”

FOLKLORE of London for June 30th, 1909, in a review of this work from the pen of Mr. M. Longworth Dames, I. C. S. (Retd.) writes :—

“In this little volume ten stories from North India, which have already appeared in the *Modern Review*, are reprinted in a convenient form. \* \* \* \*. The stories are told in good English, \* \*. The stories are excellent examples of the tales of wonder, adventure, and enchantment that circulate throughout the Mohammedan world. \* \*. The town of Janjal Nagari in the Land of Darkness is a sort of Gotham with features suggesting Laputa, and the continuation of extreme folly with philosophical disputation is very effective. The more elaborate stories are all good of their class, and ‘The Seven Princes,’ ‘Vikram and the Faqir,’ and ‘Prince Mahbub’ are well worthy of association with our old favorites from Alif Laila.

“It is to be hoped that Shaikh Chilli will continue his collections, and make known to the world some more gems from his treasure-house.”

This work has been recommended by the Directors of Public Instruction, Punjab, and Central Provinces as a book suitable for the Libraries of Colleges and High Schools. The Educational Department of Bengal as well as of the Baroda State have purchased copies of this work for the use of the Schools in those territories.

---

*Office of Director of Public Instruction, Central Provinces.*  
ORDER No. 7836.

The Director of Public Instruction, Central Provinces, is pleased to sanction the book entitled "Folk Tales of Hindustan by Shaikh Chilli"—price paper cover Re. 1-4, cloth bound Re. 1-12, as a prize and library book in the Anglo-Vernacular Middle and High Schools of these Provinces. \* \* \*

(Sd.) S. C. HILL,  
*Director of Public Instruction,*  
*Central Provinces.*

DATED NAGPUR, }  
The 7th December 1908. }

---

No. 646.

FROM—THE SECRETARY,  
*Punjab Text Book, Lahore.*

TO—THE ASSISTANT MANAGER,  
*The Panini Office, Allahabad.*  
LAHORE, 12TH JULY, 1909.

SIR,

With reference to your publication entitled "Folk Tales of Hindustan by Shaikh Chilli," recently under the consideration of the Punjab Text Book Committee, I have the honour to state that it has been recommended for the Libraries of Anglo-Vernacular Schools in the Punjab.

I have the honour to be,

Sir,

Your most obedient servant,

(Sd.) J. C. KNOWLTON,  
*Secretary, Punjab Text Book Committee.*

---

Price Paper cover Re. 1-4 ; Cloth bound Re. 1-12 only.

## The Private Journal of the Marquess of Hastings.

A VERY INTERESTING WORK

Paper cover Rs. 2 : Cloth Rs. 3 Postage extra.

### OPINIONS.

**Prof. Jadunath Sarkar, M. A., Premchand Roychand Scholar, writes in the Modern Review :—**The Panini Office deserve the thanks of the public for placing before them a reprint of this very interesting work at about a quarter of the price of the original. The paper is fairly thick. The misprints are remarkably few. This candid picture of India ninety-four years ago, has interest not only for the student of history and of manners, but also for the traveller, the *shikari*, and the natural historian, Lord Hastings's notes on animals being of no small value. A very pleasing light is thrown on the great pro-consul's character when we see him strictly enjoining that no harm should be done by his camp-followers to the villagers on the way, almost weeping to see that banana trees had been uprooted and used in lining his route, being visibly touched at the silent but respectful welcome of the crowds of Indians on his return to Calcutta, or

( 10 )

breaking down at the inevitably parting from the dear ones who must be sent Home to escape the heat of the land of exile. We see in his dealings with native princes that he was a gentleman above everything else; we wonder that it was left for him to discover that in ruling subject races sympathy is the best policy. Comic touches are not wanting.

**The Indian Review.**—A great deal of valuable information is to be found in this *Journal*. \* \* \* In all his political dealings in India, His Lordship was actuated by a high sense of duty and morality.

**Bande Mataram.**—The work is too well-known to require introduction. It is a book of exceptional interest—one which the students of the History of British India cannot do without.

**Indian People, June 6, 1907.**—It is nearly a century now that Lord Hastings came out to India, but his journal may be read with peculiar interest just now. It is simple and the ring of sincerity is unmistakeable. We wonderingly read how the Governor-General went about, mixing with Indian princes and nobles very cordially, entertaining them and being entertained by them. The impressions recorded are frank and straightforward. Everything interested the writer and he took an interest in everything.

This work has been recommended by the Directors of Public Instruction, Bengal, Eastern Bengal and Assam, and Bombay, for the Libraries of Colleges and Schools. The Director of Public Instruction, Bombay, has been pleased to publish the following notification in "*Indian Education*":—"The Private Journal of the Marquess of Hastings, reprinted by the 'Panini Office', Allahabad, Price Rs. 3 per copy, is recommended as a book suitable for the Libraries of Colleges and High Schools in this Presidency."

(Sd.) W. H. SHARP,

*Director of Public Instruction.*

**The English Works of Raja Ram Mohan Roy.**—With an English translation of Tuhfatul Muwahhiddin (His Arabic-Persian pamphlet.) This edition also contains some additional letters, an introduction and 4 illustrations. Cr. 8vo., pages 1008 Cloth. Gilt-lettered. Price Rs. 5. Postage extra.

#### Contents:

Biographical Sketch of the Author. Introduction. Translation of an abridgment of the Vedanta. Translation of the Mundakopanishad. Translation of the Kathopanishad. Translation of the Isopanishad. Divine Worship by means of the Gayatri. A Defence of Hindu Theism. A Second Defence of the Monotheistical System of the Vedas. An apology for the Pursuit of Final Beatitude. Religious instructions founded on sacred authorities. The Brahmanical Magazine. Answer of a Hindu, &c. Translation of a Sanskrit Tract on Different Modes of Worship. Humble Suggestions, &c. The Trust-deed of the Brahmo Samaj. Autobiographical Sketch. Introduction, &c. Preliminary Remarks—Brief Sketch of the Ancient and Modern Boundaries and History of India. Questions and Answers on the Judicial System of India. Questions and Answers on the Revenue System of India. A paper on the Revenue System of India, Additional Queries, respecting the condition of India. Appendix. Remarks on Settlement in India by Europeans. Translation of a Conference between an Advocate for, and an Opponent of, the practice of Burning Widows Alive; from the original Bungla. A second conference between an Advocate for, and an Opponent of, the practice of Burning Widows Alive. Abstract of the Arguments regarding the Burning of Widows, considered as a Religious Rite. Brief Remarks regarding Modern Encroachments on the Ancient Rights of Females, according to the Hindoo Law of Inheritance. Essay on the Rights of Hindus over Ancestral Property according to the Law of Bengal: Appendix: Hindoo Law of Inheritance. Petition against the Press Regulation: (1) to the Supreme Court, and (2) to the King in Council. A letter to Lord Amherst on English Education. Address to Lord William Bentinck. Anti-Suttee Petition to the House of Commons. The Precepts of Jesus the Guide to Peace and Happiness. An Appeal to the Christian Public in Defence of the Precepts of Jesus. Second Appeal to the Christian Public in Defence of the Precepts of Jesus. Final Appeal to the Christian Public in Defence of the Precepts of Jesus. A letter on the Prospects of Christianity. The Common Basis of Hindooism and Christianity. A Dialogue between a Missionary, and Three Chinese Converts. Speeches and Letters. Petition to Government against the Resumption of Lakheraj Land. A Present to the Believers in one God. Index.

## THE DAILY PRACTICE OF THE HINDUS.

*Contains the morning and mid-day duties. 2nd Edition—revised and enlarged.*

**Price Re. 1-4.**

---

In reviewing this work, *The Theosophy in India* for August 1909, wrote :—

"To a Hindu the book should be more than welcome, containing as it does many a rational explanation of the ceremonies enjoined upon him by Munn and His successors. \* \* In the whole book nothing can surpass the lucidity which the author gives to the true meaning of the Gâyatri, the master mantra of the Hindu."

The *Central Hindu College Magazine* for July, 1909, in reviewing this book, writes :—

This is a valuable and yet easily read book that we can keep on hand, to refresh our minds about the truths underlying the daily practice when custom is blunting the perception of the meaning of the recitations we have been taught to address to the Gods, to the Guru and to the Self. As the Author puts it: these practices will keep alive in us the memory that we are not only physical beings owing duties to our family, kinsmen, guests and out-castes, as well as to beasts and birds, but that we are spiritual beings as well, owing duties to the various grades of spiritual entities—Pitris, Devas etc., at the same time we shall learn the laws of health and good living. We strongly recommend the book to all our readers not yet acquainted with it; therein they may find explanations of points of daily ceremonial that may have puzzled them, for the Author is enlightened as well as learned, and we also owe to him translations from the Samskr̥t of works of Hindū philosophy.

---

## The Dietetic Treatment of Diabetes.

**By Major B. D. Basu, I. M. S. (Retd.)**

*Cloth bound, Gilt letters, Price one rupee and eight annas only.*

This work will prove of use to the diabetic as well as to the ordinary Medical practitioner. It is written with a view to enlighten the sufferers from diabetes which unfortunately is a common disease of the educated classes of India to avoid those articles of food and drink which are harmful to them, and give a list of those which may do them good. The get up of the book is excellent.

The ably-conducted *Medico-Surgical Journal of the Tropics*, in its issue of August, 1909, in reviewing the work writes :—

The value of this excellent little book is summed up in its Foreword which we adopt as our own. "Unfortunately Diabetes is a common disease among the educated community in India. It is therefore necessary that one should be familiar with what to eat and drink in this disorder." This well and concisely written and pointedly states the most important facts. Major Basu has seen a good deal of this disease in India and is entitled to a respectful hearing, when he says that as a rule Diabetes cases live longer in India than elsewhere and his explanation is that Indians are vegetarians and therefore their kidneys are less worked than in the case of meat-eaters. Indians are also frequent bathers and therefore the skin does much of the work that kidneys would do. "The marvellous residual kidney power of the natives of India

is the key-note of the longevity of cases of Diabetes amongst them. They retain their kidney power unimpaired from their vegetarian diet and non-alcoholic drink and also from the fact that they keep the pores of their skin open by regular daily baths."

Here is a note of warning "The reckless prescription of animal food has been often followed by serious consequences" because patients often unaccustomed to it sank rapidly. Animal food ought not to be recommended in any Kidney disease primary or secondary. It would be well for every practitioner to get a copy of this book. It has all the facts and theories of the latest kind and what is more the practitioner and the patient will find it a perfect *vade mecum*. All that is interesting or useful is to be found in it.

			Price.		
			Rs.	a.	p.
An Easy introduction to Yoga Philosophy ...	...	...	0	8	0
Śiva Samhitā (English translation) ...	...	...	0	8	0
Vedānta tatvatraya (     „     ) ...	...	...	0	8	0
The Three Truths of Theosophy ...	...	...	0	1	0
The right of Wahabis to pray in the same mosque with the Sunnis—an important judgment on a very disputed question of Muhammadan Law ...	...	...	2	0	0
The Bhagwad-Gita in Modern Life by Rai Bahadur Lala Baij Nath, B.A., F.A. U., &C. ...	...	...	1	0	0
Chromopathy ...	...	...	0	8	0
Astavakra Gītā (English translation) ...	...	...	0	4	0
A treatise on Water works in Bengalee in 2 vols. ...	...	...	5	0	0
The Bengalee works of Rajah Ram Mohan Roy, cloth, gilt letters ...	...	...	4	0	0
Life and teachings of Paramhansa Rām Kṛṣṇa (in Hindi) ...	...	...	1	0	0
Students' Edition of Kathopaniṣad ...	...	...	0	4	0

To be had of—

The MANAGER, PANINI OFFICE,

Bahadurganj, ALLAHABAD.

# IN ORIGINAL SANSKRIT

Yajnavalkya Smṛiti

WITH THE FAMOUS

Commentary

OF

Vijñānes'vara

CALLED

**The Mitaksara**

And the well-known

**TIKA**

OF

Vaidy natha Payagūṇḍa

CALLED

**Balambhaṭṭi**

Super Royal Octavo thick paper and bold

Devanagiri type.

EDITED BY

**Babu Govinda Dasa.**

For each part of 200 pages Rs. 2.

*Apply to*

**The Manager, Indian Press,**

**ALLAHABAD.**

# GOOD NEWS TO LOVERS OF LITERATURE.

We have just published

## CHAYANIKA ( চয়নিকা )

A choice poetical selection from those of Babu Rabindranath Tagore, the greatest poet of Bengal, in one volume. Illustrated, neatly printed on Art paper, elegantly bound in cloth and gold, a prize book *par excellence*.—Price Rs. 4 only; and also a complete edition of his songs

## GAN ( গান )

every note from his boyhood up to the present time have been collected. His songs need no fresh introduction. Neatly printed and bound.—Rs. 2. And all his prose writings on Ancient and Modern literature, on Society and State and on Religion, different topics in different 6 vols.

## BANGA BHASA O SAHITYA ( বঙ্গভাষা ও সাহিত্য )

A History of the Bengali literature, Babu Dines Chandra Sen, B.A.'s monumental work, third edition revised and enlarged.—Rs. 4 only.

## RIDDHI ( রিদ্ধি )

A treatise on Domestic Economy by Babu Jnanendra Mohan Das, elegantly bound.—Price Rs. 1-4-0.

## LIFE OF VIDYASAGAR (ISWAR CHANDRA.)

By Babu Chandi Charan Banerjee, the best life of that great man.—Price Rs. 3 only.

## SAMPATTI SHASTRA ( সম্পত্তি শাস্ত্র )

By Pandit Mahabir Prasad Dwivedi, a book in Hindi on Political Economy.—Rs. 2-8-0.

## KABITA KALAP ( कविता कलाप )

An Illustrated Hindi Poetical Selection.—Rs. 2-8-0.

## HINDI KOBID-RATNA MALA ( हिन्दी कोविद रत्नमाला )

An Illustrated Life of renowned Hindi Poets.—Rs. 1-8-0.

And also we have in Hindi, Histories of Japan, Germany, France, &c., the Stories of Sanskrit Classics, Novels, Dramas, and other story books, all in elegant Hindi, neatly printed and beautifully got up.

For particulars apply with postage for detailed price list.

Order to-day to

**The Indian Press, Allahabad.**

**ORDER FORM.**

To

**The MANAGER,**

Pāṇinī Office, Bhuvanēś'warī Āś'ram,  
*Bahadurganj, Allahabad.*

SIR,

Please enlist my name as a subscriber to the *Sacred Books of the Hindus* for one year, and realise the annual subscription of Rs. 12-12-0 (inclusive of postage), by sending me all the numbers published, per V. P. P.

Yours faithfully,

Please write very legibly { *Name* .....  
*Address* .....

To

**THE MANAGER,**

PANINI OFFICE, BHUVANESHWARI ASHRAM,

*Bahadurganj,*

**ALLAHABAD.**